SOME IMPROVEMENTS TO THE Art of Teaching,

Especially in the

FIRST GROUNDING OF A YOUNG SCHOLAR In Grammar Learning.

Shewing a Short, Sure, and Easie way to bring a Scholar to *Variety* and *Elegancy* in Writing Latine.

Written for the Help and Ease of all *Vshers* of Schools, and *Country School-Masters*, and for the Use and Profit of all *Younger Scholars*.

The Third Edition with many Additions.

By *WILLIAM WALKER*, B. D.
Author of the Treatise of Idioms and English Particles.

Fundamento tota domus nititur. Cic.

LONDON,
Printed by *J. M.* and are to be sold by *Tho. Sawbridge* at the *Three Flower-de-luces* in *Little Britain*. 1683.

Mary Gratwick
1 her book

containing
curious dialogues

a/

1478.aaa.4

SOME IMPROVEMENTS TO THE Art of Teaching,

Especially in the

FIRST GROUNDING OF A YOUNG SCHOLAR In Grammar Learning.

Shewing a Short, Sure, and Easie way to bring a Scholar to *Variety* and *Elegancy* in Writing Latine.

Written for the Help and Ease of all *Vshers* of Schools, and *Country School-Masters*, and for the Use and Profit of all *Younger Scholars*.

The Third Edition with many Additions.

By *WILLIAM WALKER*, B. D.
Author of the Treatise of Idioms and English Particles.

Fundamento tota domus nititur. Cic.

LONDON,
Printed by *J. M.* and are to be sold by *Tho. Sawbridge* at the *Three Flower-de-luces* in *Little Britain*. 1683.

EXIMIO,
Integritatis & Honoris
VIRO,
Dno *STEPHANO FOXO*,
Equiti Aurato, &c.
Scholæ Publicæ *Farleienſis*
In Comitatu Wiltoniæ
FUNDATORI,
Hanc Scholaſticæ Inſtitutionis,
Puerorúmque Docendi Artis
Subſtructionem,
Tanquam Gratitudinis Aram,
Benevolentiæque Monumentum,
GUILIELMUS WALKER,
Scholæ Publicæ *Granthamienſis*
In Comitatu Lincolniæ,
A Reverendo olim Præſule,
Dno *Richardo Foxo*,
Wintonienſi Epiſcopo,
Structæ & Dotatæ,
MAGISTER
Dicat, Conſecrat.

THE PREFACE TO THE READER.

Courteous Reader,

TEaching of a Scholar is much like the building of an Houſe: in both there muſt be a Foundation, *before there can be any* Superſtructure: *and accordingly as the Foundation is well, or ill laid, ſo will the Superſtructure be well, or ill built. As great care therefore there ought to be taken in the* Grounding *of Scholars, as in the* Founding *of Houſes; nay, a Greater. For, if I may ſpeak my* Experience, *who now have years enow on my back, to warrant my taking that word into my mouth, this I have found (and who indeed finds not the ſame?) that as, where a Child is at firſt rightly and thoroughly grounded, the reſt of his Work goes on with readineſs, with eaſe, with ſpeed, and with aſſurance: ſo where he is ill grounded, all falls out contrariwiſe: much labour, and much patience of the Maſter,*

and

and much diligence and induſtry of the Scholar, will hardly at laſt, if ever, be able to reſcue him from the miſchievous conſequences of a previous ill grounding. The firſt Seaſoning ſticks long by the Veſſel: and he will not, without difficulty, learn, at laſt, to do right, who hath been principled, at firſt, to do wrong. So that Timotheus *the Muſick-maſter ſeems to me to have been much in the right of it, when, demanding double Pay for one that had been initiated into that Art under another Maſter, he gave this for the Reaſon of it, becauſe he was to be at double pains, the one of Unteaching him what he had learned wrong, and the other of Teaching him that which he ſhould learn right. Nay, ſo powerful is ill habit, when once it hath got hold, and ſo difficult to be eradicated, where it hath taken any deep root, that I have found it much harder to unteach the wrong, than to teach the right. Great Care therefore ought to be taken by* Patrons *of* Schools *in the choice of thoſe Perſons to whom the Scholars firſt* Grounding-work *muſt be committed; and Good Conſcience ought to be uſed by thoſe Perſons, who take upon them the doing of that work, leſt through want of Ability for, or Integrity in, the diſcharge of that Duty, they do irreparable damage unto thoſe who are committed to their Charge. And the conſideration of this hath made me look ſo far back into, and take ſuch pains about the right* Grounding of a Latine Grammar Scholar. *And I would to God ſome body elſe would look yet farther back into, and take ſome pains*

about the right Grounding *even of an* Engliſh Accidence Scholar, *yea of Primar, and* A, B, C. *and Horn-book Scholars: for generally from, and in, the learning of the very firſt Rudiments, and Elements of Literature, in the very Reading, and Spelling, and Pronouncing of Words, and Syllables, all is out of order, and Children are either not taught, or wrong taught, the very Pronunciation of their Letters, Conſtitution of Syllables, and Compoſition of Words; and that ill Teaching hath a potent domination and a malignant influence upon all their future Learning, ſome being very difficultly, and ſome never at all, freed from Captivity to that ill habit of Reading, Spelling, and Pronouncing, which they were firſt principled in, and inured unto, under their Ignorant and Injudicious petit School-maſters, and School-madams; whoſe reformation were well worth the Inſpection of Graveſt Authority: that ſo our Noble Language, towards whoſe completion all the beſt, and learnedeſt of Ancient or Modern Tongues have been liberal Contributors, though now debaſed and diſcredited by the ill Teaching of it, might at length be reformed and refined, and brought by a good inſtitution, to that perfection, which it is capable of; and which once attained, I know none that would much excel it.*

But, to return to that which I digreſſed from: having ſpent many, or rather moſt of the beſt years of my life, even the very flower and prime of my days in the Exerciſe of Teaching Scholars,

and

and that in ſeveral both Publick *and* Private *Schools, and having in that time travelled much to find out, by what Means and Methods I might* improve, *to any conſiderable degree of Advancement,* The Art of Teaching; *and eſpecially in that part of it, which I diſcerned to be the moſt neceſſary to be well minded, and yet found of all other to be the moſt neglected, (I know not whether through the Ignorance or Idleneſs of ſome, even too many, Pretending Teachers) which is the very firſt* Grounding *of the Scholar, and laying the* Foundation *of all his future attainments, whether of Learning or Honour; and having by ſearching found out ſomething conducible to that end; and having ſeen the Uſefulneſs thereof in the experimenting of it upon ſuch as I have taught; to the end I might ſave others ſomewhat of the Labour, which that Search had coſt me, and help them forward in that ſo difficult a work, and yet ſo neceſſary to be carefully attended unto by all Conſcientious Perſons, who take upon themſelves the Calling of being Teachers of Children (a Calling every way deſerving to be honoured with as great reſpect, as it is too often treated with contempt, by ſuch as underſtand neither the* Skill *required to it, nor the* Pains *taken in it, nor the* Benefits *reaped from it, by the whole Church and Kingdom (the Glories whereof do owe the firſt foundation of all their after high Superſtructions of Honour and* Grandeur *to it) I did ſome years ago throw into theſe Papers thoſe Advices and Counſels to the*

Induſtrious Teacher, *and thoſe Helps and Furtherances to the Studious* Learner, *which if diligently peruſed, and purſued, would (I was well aſſured of it) by the Bleſſing of God, very much eaſe the trouble of the One, and not a little promote the profiting of the Other; ſo as that the One ſhould follow his* Teaching *with delight, and the Other proceed in his* Learning *with profit; and Both come off from their ſeveral Employments with Reputation and Credit: Whereof the Calling of this Work now to a* Third Edition *may be an evidence too bright in it ſelf to need a Sun-beam to be brought in for illuſtration of it.*

And now touching this Third Edition, it is neceſſary that I acquaint you, that it brings with it both ſomething Leſs, *and ſomething* More, *than the Former did.*

Firſt, Something Leſs. *For, having gone thorough the whole* Latine Syntaxis, *fitting* Engliſh Examples *to the Rules of it, after the manner of that* Specimen, *which I gave, of ſuch a Deſign in the former Editions of this Work: and finding it grown too bulky and diſproportionable to the reſt of this Book, to go along with it, and indeed big enough to be* a Book of it ſelf, *as well for that reaſon, as alſo to make room for* other Additions, *whereof you have part now, and may have more hereafter, I reſolved it ſo ſhould be. And ſo you have by that ſo much the leſs. But then again to compenſate that Defalcation, you have here,*

Second-

Secondly, Something More. *For beſides the many ſeveral* Additions *up and down the Book, you have together* Threeſcore and Seven new Engliſh Dialogues, *compoſed of the Engliſhes of thoſe two Collections of Latine Phraſes out of* Hermes Anglo-Latinus *and* Godwins Roman Antiquities, *deſigned and done to ſhew the Uſe of Latine Phraſes, and to teach the Child by Practice in Tranſlating how to uſe them: than which I know nothing, that with more certainty, and greater eaſe both for Maſter and Scholar, nor with greater ſpeed can bring a Child to write Proper, Elegant, and Man-like, or rather Roman-like Latine. To which I may add, that the Matter of moſt of the later Set of Dialogues (that out of* Godwins Antiquities) *is ſuch, as will fill the Childs head, whilſt he is doing ſomething elſe, and thinking of no ſuch thing, with very much of the* Roman Cuſtoms, *and ſo enable him with greater eaſe to be a Reader of the beſt of Roman Authors, and eſpecially of* Cicero, *the Flower and Glory of all Roman Orators and Philoſophers too. And the more willing am I to promote this kind of Literature, becauſe I find, not* Ancient Authors *only, but* Modern Writers *alſo, delighting to embroider their Language, and embelliſh their Style, with Phraſes, and Forms of Speech, alluding to thoſe Cuſtoms, as compriſing within them, like Diamonds enchaſed in beazils of Gold, much at once both of Beauty and Worth, in ſmall weight and little compaſs.*

And

The Preface to the Reader.

And now, Courteous *Reader*, *begging your pardon for that freedom of Language, which I have uſed in this Preface, proceeding from a candid Breaſt, and an uninvidious Soul, whoſe principal aim in all his Private Labours is, next the Glory of God, at Publick Good; and deſiring your Prayers for Gods Bleſſing on this Work, that it may turn to His Honour, His Churches Good, and the Advantage of all, who either as Teachers, or Learners, ſhall be concerned therein, without further trouble to my ſelf, or you, I end this Diſcourſe, and reſt*

YOUR SERVANT

In our one Great Lord

and Maſter Chriſt Jeſus,

W. W.

A

A
Summary Account
Of the enſuing
TREATISE.

CHAP. I.

OF *the Forming of Nouns* Page 1
The Engliſh Signs of Caſes to be well known ibid.
The manner of Forming Nouns through every Caſe of every Declenſion 2
Of the various Terminations of ſundry Caſes ibid.
Of the Dative and Ablative Caſe Plural of the Firſt Declenſion 3
Of the Vocative Singular of the Second Declenſion 4
Of Nouns ending in us *in the Vocative Singular of the Second Declenſion* ibid.
Of [i] *in the Vocative from Nominatives in* us 5
Of ai *and* ei *in the Vocative Singular* ibid.
Of the Accuſative Singular of the Third Declenſion ibid.
Nouns ending in im ibid.
Nouns ending in em *and* im ibid.
Of the Ablative Singular of the Third Declenſion 6

Nouns

The CONTENTS.

Nouns having [i] *in their Ablative Singular* ibid.
The Ablative of Neuters in al ibid. *In* ar ibid. *Or* e ibid.
The Ablative of Adjectives in is *or* er ibid.
The Ablative of Adjectives derived of Proper Names 7
The Ablative of Words having only im *in the Accusative Case* ibid.
Nouns having both e *and* i *in the Ablative Singular* 8
The Ablative Singular of Substantives having em *and* im *in their Accusative* ibid.
The Ablative of Adjectives of one Termination ibid.
Of par *and his Compounds* 9
The Ablative of Adjectives of the Comparative Degree ibid.
Of the Terminations eis *and* is *in the Nominative and Accusative Plural of the Third Declension* ibid.
Of the Nominative and Accusative Plural of the Third Declension in the Neuter Gender 10
What Words of the Third Declension end in a, *and what in* ia ibid.
Of the Genitive Plural of the Third Declension ibid.
What words have ium *in the Genitive Plural* ibid.
The Genitive of words having i *in their Ablative Singular* ibid.
The Genitive Plural of words of two or more Syllables ending with two Consonants 11
The Genitive Plural of Nouns in er, es, *and* is *not increasing* ibid.
The Genitive Plural of Polysyllables increasing in the Genitive Singular 12
The Genitive Plural of several sorts of Monosyllables ibid.
The Genitive Plural in ium *syncopated* 13
Some in ium *have also* orum ibid.
Greek words in ma *having both* um *and* orum *in their Genitive Plural* 14

Of

The CONTENTS.

Of on *in the Genitive Plural* ibid.
Of the Dative Plural of the Third Declenſion ibid.
Neuter Greek words having both ibus *and* is *in the Dative and Ablative Plural* ibid.
Of the Genitive Singular of the Fourth Declenſion 15
Of words of the Fourth Declenſion having i *in the Genitive Caſe* ibid. *and* is *and* uis ibid.
Of the Dative Singular of the Fourth Declenſion ibid.
Of words having u *in the Dative Singular of the Fourth Declenſion* ibid.
Of the Ablative Singular of the Fourth Declenſion 16
Of the Genitive Plural of the Fourth Declenſion ibid.
Of the Dative Plural of the Fourth Declenſion ibid.
Of words ending in ubus ibid.
——*and both* ubus *and* ibus ibid.
Of the Genitive Singular of the Fifth Declenſion ibid.
Of es *in the Genitive Sing. of the Fifth Declenſ.* ibid.
——*and* i 17. *and* e ibid.
Of e *in the Dative Sing. of the Fifth Declenſion* ibid.

CHAP. II.

Of the Comparing of Adjectives. The way to learn it ibid.
Of Irregular Compariſons 18
Comparatives and Superlatives formed from Poſitives having a Vowel before us 19
Of Defective Compariſons ibid.
Adjectives wanting the Poſitive Degree 20
Adjectives wanting the Comparative Degree ibid.
Adjectives wanting the Superlative Degree ibid.
Adjectives wanting both the Poſitive and Superlative Degree 21
Of Redundant Compariſons ibid.
Two Superlatives from one Poſitive ibid.
A Comparative formed from a Superlative ibid.
Adjectives not compared 21, 22

CHAP.

The CONTENTS.

CHAP. III.

Of the Forming of Verbs 22
The Tenſes formed one from another ibid.
The way to learn to form Verbs 23
The benefit of forming Verbs 24
Of Verbs Defective 25, &c.

CHAP. IV.

Of Tranſlating Engliſh into Latine 27
The time for a Scholar to begin to make Latine ibid.
Of Pointing and Rules for it 27, 28
Making Latine beſt begun with Tranſlating 35
In Tranſlating, the Natural Order of words to be obſerved ibid.
General Rules touching the Natural Order of Words 36
Special Rules for the Natural Order of Words ibid.
The way to teach the Natural Order of Words 38
The firſt entring of a Scholar into Tranſlating ibid.
Directions for making plain Latine ibid.
Directions to bring Children to underſtand the difficulties about the Relative 47
Of the Ablative Caſe Abſolute 49
What the Teacher is to do with *and* at *his Scholars Tranſlation* 50
Parſing to be performed by the Scholar alone ibid.
Engliſhes for Tranſlation to be contrived ſuitable to the Grammar Rules ibid.
Examples of ſuch Engliſhes in the Firſt Concord 51
in the Second Concord 55
in the Third Concord 57

CHAP. V.

Of the Artificial Order and Elegant placing of Words and Clauſes 59, 67

CHAP.

The CONTENTS.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Use of Phrases 68
How to store a Scholar with Phrases ibid.
A Collection of Phrases out of Hermes Anglo-Latinus 69
A Collection of Phrases out of Godwins *Antiquities* 80
How to shew the Use of Phrases 94
Thirty four Dialogues composed (in order to the shewing of Children the Use of Phrases) out of, or agreeably to, the Phrases collected out of Hermes Anglo-Latinus 96
Thirty three Dialogues composed out of, or agreeably unto, the Phrases collected out of Godwins *Antiquities* 113

CHAP. VII.

Of Variation of Phrases 139
Rules of Variation ibid.
How to vary a Verb Active ibid. *Passive* ibid.
Ablative Case Absolute 140
Adjective with res ibid.
Adjective of the Neuter Gender ibid.
Latter of two Substantives ibid.
Adjective Absolute in the Neuter with his Genitive Case 141
Adjective with his Substantive wherewith he agrees ibid.
Accusative Case before the Infinitive Mood ibid.
Nominative Case with his Verb, and quod *or* ut ib.
Habeo 142
Genitive Case with his own Partitive ibid.
Genitive Case after Superlative Degree ibid.
Infinitive Mood Active ibid.
Infinitive Passive after an Adjective 143
Comparative Degree ibid.
Superlative Degree ibid.
Single Words 144
Sentences 147

CHAP.

The CONTENTS.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Elegancies of the Particles 149
Particles elegantly used, where other Expressions are not elegant 150
Particles elegantly used for others, which are not unelegant 152
Particles elegantly used in contexture together with others 157

CHAP. IX.

Of the Idioms of English and Latine 166
How to bring a Scholar to render English Proprieties according to the Propriety of the Latine ibid.
Ten English Dialogues consisting of Idiomatical Expressions contrived on purpose for Translation, and to bring Children off from the baldneß of a Verbal Translation to a more Elegant way of Writing 169
One English Dialogue, with a threefold Latine Translation of it, to exemplifie variety of elegant Translatings of the same English Idiom 178

ERRATA.

Pag. 4. lin. penult. l. *esses*. p. 16. l. ult. l. *gunt*. p. 23. l. 3. *amer, amarer*. p. 28. l. 1. (.) p. 29. l. 33. causal, ib. 38. causal. p. 30. l. 43. *nulla unquam barbaria*. p. 42. l. 12. *Calliopius*. p. 51. Col. 2. l. 9. wepteſt. p. 66. l. 26. *hodierno die consecutus*. p. 71. Col. 2. l. 32. *Respice*. p. 74. Col. 2. l. 35. *sumptu*. p. 79. Col. 2. l. 31. *abbinc*. p. 141. l. 23. *volitabant*. p. 147. l. 29. *evadas*. p. 162. l. 19. *questus eß Cesar: quippe*. p. 174. l. 17. now he is. p. 178. Col. 2. l. 1. *qui*.

Such Readers as have skill to find out more miſtakes, the Author hopes will have candor to correct them.

THE

THE ART OF TEACHING,

Improved in the grounding of a young Scholar in the Latine TONGUE.

CHAP. I.

Of the Forming of Nouns.

INtending to write, not upon every thing, that is to be performed by the *Teacher*, or prescribed to the *Learner*, of the *Latine Tongue*, but only on some *particular Observables*, conducing to the *Grounding of a young Scholar* therein, I begin with that which is both most *necessary*, and most *useful*, the *Declining*, or *Forming of Nouns*: touching which the Directions to the *Teacher* are as follow.

Non ut omnia dicerem, sectatus, quod infinitum erat; sed ut maximè necessaria. Quint. l. 1. c. 9.

First, In the learning of the Declensions of Nouns make your Scholars to attend unto, and be expert in the *English signs* of every several Case, by making them together with the Latine Nouns, which they decline, to give the English: thus, Nom. *Musa*, *a* song, Gen. *Musæ*, *of* a song, Dat. *Musæ*, *to* a song, Acc. *Musam*, *a*, or *the* song, *&c.* This initiates them in the Practice of rendring *Latine into English*.

Secondly, Use them not only to give the English for the Latine, but also, *vice versâ*, the Latine for the English: thus, Nom. A song, *Musa*, Gen. Of a song, *Musæ*, Dat. To a song, *Musæ*, &c.

This initiates them in the skill of turning *Engliſh into Latine.*

Thirdly, Practiſe them in declining forwards and backwards (*i. e.* Latine before Engliſh, and Engliſh before Latine) *Subſtantives and Adjectives*, firſt of like *Termination* in all Caſes: as, *Muſa jucunda*: then of *unlike Termination*; firſt in *fewer* Caſes, as, *dies ſplendens*; then in *more*, as, *Poeta doctus*, *lapis pretioſus*, *ficus pulla*, &c. and ſo far as may be done in all Declenſions. This Exerciſe, as being directly the practice of all the *ſecond Concord*, will be of very great uſe to them in making of Latine.

N. B. It will be of great uſe to the purpoſes aforeſaid, to put them to the forming of *Engliſh Subſtantives*, firſt *alone* without Adjectives; thus, Nom. *a* houſe, Gen. *of* a houſe, *&c.* then *together* with Adjectives; thus, Nom. *a* fair houſe, Gen. *of* a fair houſe, *&c.*

Fourthly, When they are perfect in the *Terminations* of the Caſes of every Declenſion *ſeverally*, then exerciſe them in giving the *Terminations* of every Caſe throughout all the Declenſions together: after this manner.

The Terminations of all the Caſes in every Declenſion.

The *Genitive* Caſe ſingular of the *Firſt* Declenſion ends in *æ*, as *Muſæ*; of the *Second* in *i*, as *Magiſtri*; of the *Third* in *is*, as *Lapidis*; of the *Fourth* in *us*, as *Manus*; of the *Fifth* in *ei*, as *Diei.*

The *Dative* Caſe Singular of the *Firſt* Declenſion ends in *æ*, as *Muſæ*; of the *Second* in *o*, as *Magiſtro*; of the *Third* in *i*, as *Lapidi*; of the *Fourth* in *ui*, as *Manui*; of the *Fifth* in *ei*, as *Diei.*

The *Accuſative* Caſe Singular of the *Firſt* Declenſion ends in *am*, as *Muſam*; of the *Second* in *um*, as *Magiſtrum*; of the *Third* in *em*, as *Lapidem*, or in *im*, as *Sitim*, or in both *em* and *im*, as *Febrem* and *Febrim*; of the *Fourth* in *um*, as *Manum*; of the *Fifth* in *em*, as *Diem.*

The *Vocative* is like the *Nominative*: except in *ſome* Nouns of the *Second* Declenſion ending in *us* or *ius*, whoſe Vocative reſpectively ends in *e*, or *i*; as Nom. *Dominus*, Voc. *Domine.* Nom. *Filius*, Voc. *Fili.*

The *Ablative* Caſe Singular of the *Firſt* Declenſion ends in *a*, as *Musâ*; of the *Second* in *o*, as *Magiſtro*; of the *Third* in *e*, as *Lapide*, or in *i*, as *Siti*, or in both *e* and *i*, as *Febre* and *Febri*; of the *Fourth* in *u*, as *Manu*; of the *Fifth* in *e*, as *Die.*

The *Nominative* Caſe Plural of the *Firſt* Declenſion ends in *æ*, as *Muſæ*; of the *Second* in *i*, as *Magiſtri*; of the *Third* in *es*, as *Lapides*; of the *Fourth* in *us*, as *Manus*; of the *Fifth* in *es*, as *Dies.*

The

The *Genitive* Caſe Plural of the *Firſt* Declenſion ends in *arum*, as *Muſarum*; of the *Second* in *orum*, as *Magiſtrorum*; of the *Third* in *um*, as *Lapidum*, or in *ium*, as *Febrium*; of the *Fourth* in *uum*, as *Mannum*; of the *Fifth* in *erum*, as *Dierum*.

The *Dative* Caſe Plural of the *Firſt* Declenſion ends in *is*, as *Muſis*, or in *abus*, as *Mulabus*, or in both *is* and *abus*, as *Filiis* and *Filiabus*; of the *Second* in *is*, as *Magiſtris*; of the *Third* in *ibus*, as *Lapidibus*; of the *Fourth* either in *ibus*, as *Manibus*, or in *ubus*, as *Artubus*, or in both *ibus* and *ubus*, as *Veribus* and *Verubus*; of the *Fifth* in *ebus*, as *Diebus*.

The *Accuſative* Caſe Plural of the *Firſt* Declenſion ends in *as*, as *Muſas*; of the *Second* in *os*, as *Magiſtros*; of the *Third* in *es*, as *Lapides*; of the *Fourth* in *us*, as *Manus*; of the *Fifth* in *es*, as *Dies*.

The *Vocative* Caſe Plural is like the *Nominative*; and the *Ablative* is like the *Dative* in all Declenſions.

Note, That all Nouns of the *Neuter Gender* of what *Declenſion* ſoever, and in what *Termination* ſoever, have their *Nominative*, *Accuſative*, and *Vocative* alike in *both Numbers*: and in the *Plural* Number do end all in *a*: except *ambo* and *duo*, and words undeclinable, as *centum*, *viginti*, *mille*, *tot*, &c.

Of the various Terminations of Caſes in ſeveral Declenſions.

In the Declenſions it is viſible, that there be ſeveral Caſes, which admit of a *variety of Terminations*. Now for as much as it may be very uſeful to Learners to know ſomething of *Certainty* in that *Variety*, I ſhall here for that cauſe give the Reader ſome account thereof.

The *Genitive* Singular of the *Firſt* Declenſion is found to have ended ſometimes in *as*, in imitation of the Greeks, as *Paterfamilias*, *filius-familias*.

Thence, *Meretrix & materfamiliâs erit una in domo.* Ter. Ad. 4. 7. *Dux ipſe viâs.* Enn. *Mercurius, cúmque eo, filius Latonâs.* Liv. Andron. *Filii terrâs.* Næv. *Nec auràs nec ſonitûs memor.* Virg.

And ſometimes in *aï*, as *aulaï*, *pictaï*.

Thence, *Dives opum, dives pictaï veſtis & auri.* Virg. *Nomen dare vobis volo Comœdiaï.* Plaut. Pœn. Prol.

Some Nouns of the *Firſt Declenſion* do end in *abus* in the *Dative* and *Ablative* Caſe *Plural*. *Of the Dative and Ablative Plur. of the Firſt Declenſion.*

The Examples hereof producible would, if doubted, clearly evince it. The Ground of adding this Termination in *abus* to that in *is*, was to diſtinguiſh the words that are ſo declined, from other words of a near ſignification, whoſe Dative and Ablative Plural end in *is*.

The words that have *abus* in the Dative and Ablative Plural are,

Filia, nata, Dea, liberta, equa, ſerva,
Mula, aſina, ſocia, anima, conſerva.

Of which *Mula* and *Liberta* are hardly, if ever, read in any other Termination but *abus*: the reſt are found to have both *is* and *abus*.

Juſtin lib. 7. hath, *Adhibitis in convivium ſuum filiis, & uxoribus, & filiabus.* Plaut. Stich. ac. 4. *Sed ego ibo intrò, & gratulabor veſtrum adventum filiis.* So *Pœn.* 4. 5. 3. 9. *Salve, Hanno, inſperatiſſime mihi tuiſque filiis* for *filiabus.* Cic. pro Cornel. *Ab Jove Optimo Maximo cæteriſque Diis, Deabuſque omnibus opem & auxilium petamus.* *Varro de R. R. l.* 3. *c.* 16. (ſpeaking of the *Muſes*, whoſe Birds the *Bees* were ſaid to be, ſaith) *His Diis Helicona atque Olympum attribuerunt homines.* *Palladius* ſpeaking of the month of *March* ſaith, *Hoc menſe ſaginati ac paſti antè admiſſarii generoſis equabus admittendi ſunt.* *Varro de R. R. l.* 2. *c.* 1. ſpeaking of the *Mares* in *Luſitania*, which are ſaid to conceive by the wind, ſaith, *Sed ex his equis qui nati pulli, non plus triennium vivunt.* See more in *Voſſ. de Analog.* l. 2. c. 4. *Alvar. Inſtit. Gram.* p. 196. *Voſſ. Etymolog. Lat.* p. 31. *Rhen. Gram. Lat.* p. 47. *Hayne Lat. Gram.* p. 15. *Ram. Lat. Gram.* l. 1. c. 7. *Farnab. Lat. Gram.* p. 7.

Of the Vocative Caſe of the Second Declenſion.

Nouns of the *Second Declenſion* ending in *us* in the *Nominative* Caſe, do end in *e* in the *Vocative.*

This is too apparent to be doubted. Even in other Terminations anciently the Vocative Caſe was diſtinguiſhed from the Nominative. Whence *puere* for *puer* is cited by *Priſcian. l.* 7. out of *Cæcilius* and *Afranius.* *Age, age puere, Duce me ad patrios fines decoratum opiparé.* And *O puere, puere, ſine me proſpicere mihi.*

But whether any Nouns ending in *us* in the Nominative do end alſo in *us* in the Vocative, may be a doubt.

In *Sidonius Carm.* 22. we may read—*Naiadas iſtic Nereidum chorus alme doce.* In *Liv.* l. 1. *ann.* V. C. is read, *Audi Jupiter, audi pater patrate populi Albani, audi tu populus Albanus.* But in theſe, and the like Examples, either there is a *Greciſm:* (for in the *Attic Dialect* the Nom. and Voc. end both alike) or an *Enallage* of the *Caſe*, the Nom. being put for the Voc. whereof there be many Examples, both in *Subſtantives* and *Adjectives*, which yet are not therefore ſaid to have a Voc. in *e* and in *us.* As *Virg.* 1. *Æn. Adſis lætitiæ Bacchus dator.*—— Perſ. 1. Sat. *Vos ô patricius ſanguis.*—— Inſomuch that even *Deus* in the Voc. Caſe is an *Atticiſm.* As Θεὸς in *Greek* is uſed for Θεὲ, which is alſo read ſo is *Deus* in Latine uſed for *Dee*, which is read alſo in Eccleſiaſtical Writers. *Tertul. l.* 1. *adverſ. Marcion. Gratus eſſes, O Deus hæretice, ſi eſſes in diſpoſitionem Creatoris.* So *Prudent. in Hamartigenia, O Dee cunctiparens, animæ dator, O Dee Chriſte.* So that the

the proper Termination of Nouns in *us* of the Second Declenſion in their Voc. is *e*: the other in *us* is figurative. Only *vulgus* hath both *e* and *us*: but *e* as a Maſculine, *us* as a Neuter: unleſs the Voc. in *us* be remaining of the old declining of this word of the *Fourth Declenſion*: whence *Chariſius* cites from *Varro*, *A vulgu condemnaretur.*

The ſame may be ſaid touching thoſe in *ius* with a Vowel or ſimple *i* before *us*, whether Proper or Common, which now end in *i* in the Voc. Caſe: their proper Termination is *e*; which being cut off by an *Apocope*, ſo they come to end in *i*.

As *fluvie* and *ſocie* is read, ſo was alſo *filie*, and *Genie*, *Antonie*, and *Virgilie*: of which the *e* being by an *Apocope* cut off, there is now remaining in uſe only *fili*, *Geni*, &c. But *Perſonal Adjectives* ſtill retain the proper Termination in *e*: as *Cynthius*, *Cynthie*, *Delius*, *Delie*, &c. See *Voſſ. de Analog.* lib. 2. cap. 5. Erras, inquit, tabellarie. *Cic. ap. Quintil. l. 9. c. 3.*

As for thoſe that end in *ius* with a Conſonant *j*, or a Diphthong *ai* or *ei* before *us*, ſuch as *Cajus*, *Majus*, *Pompejus*, *Vultejus*, their Termination is *i*.

This Voc. is formed of the Nom. by putting away *us*, and either reſolving the Diphthong into its Vowels, or turning the Conſonant *j* into *i* Vowel. Unleſs any, ſuppoſing it to be a Diphthong that in theſe words precedes *us*, will have the Voc. Caſe to end in that Diphthong: as indeed *Pompei* and *Vultei* of two Syllables may be read. *Hor. Od. 7. l. 2. Pompei meorum prime ſodalium*: and *Ep. 7. l. 1. Durus ait, Vultei, nimis attentúſq; videris.* However now uſe reſolves the Diphthong. Hence *Martial.* l. 10. Ep. 16. *Si donare vocas promittere, nec dare, Cæi.* And *Auſon. de Menſib. Maja Dea, an major, Maï, te fecerit ætas, Ambigo.* See *Voſſ. de Analog.* l. 2. c. 5, & 20.

Of the *Accuſative* Caſe Singular of the *Third Declenſion* the ordinary Termination is *em*: yet there are ſome that end only in *im*: and ſome that end both in *em* and *im*. *Of the Accuſat. Sing. of the Third Declenſion.*

Theſe end only in *im*.

Vis, ravis, ſitis, charybdis, tuſſis,
Mephitis, cannabis, magudaris, and *amuſſis,*
Præſepis, Syrtis, Opis, pelvis, buris,
Sinapis, cucumis, Leucaſpis, and *ſecuris:*
Albis, Fabaris, Bætis, Tanaïs, and *Tigris,*
Araris, Atheſis, Ligeris, Tiberis, and *Tibris.*

So *Halys* hath *Halym* and *Halyn.*

Theſe end both in *em* and *im*.

Aqualis, cutis, turris, reſtis, navis,
Sementis, puppis, bipennis, febris, clavis.

But in theſe *febris*, *navis*, *aqualis*, and *clavis*, *em* is the more uſual Termination: as is alſo *im* in theſe three, *puppis*, *reſtis*, and *turris*: to which may be added *ſtrigilis*.

This is reckoned by *Daneſius* amongſt them that have, and is acknowledged by *Voſſius* to have had, *em*, as well as *im*. *Daneſ. Schol.* p. 47. *Voſſ. de Analog.* l. 2. p. 302.

Of the Abl. Caſe Sing of the Third Declenſion. Nouns ending only in i *in their Abl. Sing.*

Of the *Ablative* Caſe Singular of the *Third Declenſion* *e* is the *ordinary* and regular Termination: yet there are ſome that end in *i*; and ſome that have both *e* and *i* in the Ablative Caſe.

Of Nouns that make their Ablative in *i* only there are theſe ſorts.

1. *Neuters* in *al* increaſing long in their Genitive Caſe, have only *i* in their Ablative; as *Animal*, Gen. *animalis*, Abl. *animali*.

Yet *hoc Sal* hath *Sale*: but that may be the Ablat. of *hic Sal*, which is far the more uſual, beſides that the *penultima* of it is ſhort.

2. *Neuters* in *ar*, if their laſt Syllable but one in their Gen. Caſe be by *Nature long*, do in their Ablat. end only in *i*: as *Calcar*, Gen. *calcaris*, Abl. *calcari*. But if the laſt Syllable but one of their Gen. Caſe be either *ſhort*, as *hepar*, Gen. *hepatis*; or but long by *Poſition*, as *far*, Gen. *farris*, then the Ablat. ends in *e*, as *hepate*, *farre*.

Yet *Poets* ſometimes form an Ablat. in *e*, of Nouns producing their laſt Syllable tave one: as *Virg. in Culice*, ——*Si nitor auri Sub laqueare domûs animum non tangit avarum.*

3. *Declinable Neuter Appellatives* in *e*, have their Ablat. ending in *i*; as *cubile*, Abl. *cubili*; ſo *apluſtre*, Abl. *apluſtri*.

Gauſape is read in the Abl. Caſe, but that is becauſe *gauſape* in the Nominative is an undeclinable word. Hence *Plin.* l. 8. c. 48. *Nam tunicâ laticlavi in modum gauſape texi nunc primùm incipit*: who a little before had uſed the ſame word in the Nomin. *Antiquis enim torus è ſtramento erat, qualiter etiam nunc in caſtris gauſape.* Or if it be the Ablative Caſe here alſo, yet in that of *Perſ.* 4. *Sat.* it is not, *Tu cum maxillis balanatum gauſape pectas.* So *præſepe* in the Abl. is from the undeclinable *præſepe* in the Nominat. *Ovid* hath *mare* in the Ablat. Caſe *l.* 5. *Triſt. El.* 2. *Exiguum pleno de mare demat aquæ.* And *de Pont. l.* 4. *El.* 6. *Euxino de mare vertet iter.* So *Plaut. Nam ſi à mare abſtinuiſſem*, as ſome Copies read it. It would be very ſparingly, if at all, uſed. *Rete* is read in the Ablat but that is from the old Nom. *retis*. Theſe *proper Neuters* in *e* are ſaid to have *e* in the Abl. viz. *Præneſte*, *Cære*, *Bibracte*, *Nipete*, *Reate*, *Soracte*. See *Voſſ. de Analog.* l. 2. c. 11. But *Daneſius* thinks them not to appertain to the preſent conſideration, as being undeclinable words, as *Alvar.* alſo ſaith, *Gram. Inſtit.* p. 211. Though *Soractis* may come of *Soractis*: for *Plin.* hath *Sacrificio annuo, quod fit ad montem Soractem.* l. 7. c. 2. See *Daneſ. Schol.* l. 1. c. 13.

4. *Adjectives* in *is* and *rr* having their Neuters in the Nom. Caſe ending in *e*, do in their Abl. end in *i*: as Nom. *fortis*, *forte*: Abl. *forti*. So Nom. *acer*, *acre*: Abl. *acri*. Hither

Hither refer names of *Months*, as *Aprilis Aprili*, *December Decembri*, as being in their nature Adjectives. Hither refer alſo *memor memori*, and *immemor immemori*, as coming from *memoris*, *immemoris*. Yet *Ovid* hath uſed *cæleſte* and *bimeſtre* in the Abl. Caſe. See *Alvar.* p. 211. *Daneſ. Schol.* l. 1. c. 13. and *Voſſ. de Analog.* l. 2. c. 11. which laſt, out of *Chariſius* cites in the Abl. Caſe (from *Pomponius*) *humile rege*; and *incolume illo*; and *cum contubernale pugnavi*; and from *Cicero*, *Quo ſtante & incolume*: and *aliquo excellente & nobile viro*; from *Nepos*, *virgine Veſtale*; and from *Saluſt*, *agreſte*.

But proper Names derived of Adjectives in *is* have *e* in their Ablat.

So *Martial.* l. 7. Ep. 23. *Cum Juvenale meo* — Cic. pro Planc. *Confiteor ſumma in Laterenſe ornamenta eſſe.* So *Annalis*, *Cerealis*, *Vitalis*, *Natalis*, *Nobilis*, *Celeris*, *Apollinaris*. See *Voſſ. de Analog.* lib. 2. cap. 11.

Affinis, *rivalis*, *familiaris*, *contubernalis*, *popularis*, *ſodalis*, *ædilis*, *annalis*, *biremis*, *natalis*, and *bipennis*, have their Ablatives properly in *i*, as being originally Adjectives: though again being uſed Subſtantively, they have ſometimes an Abl. in *e*. *Volucris* the Subſtantive hath *e*, the Adjective *i*. *Rudis* the Subſtantive hath *e*, the Adjective *i*. See *Daneſ.* and *Voſſ. loc. ſup. cit.*

5. Words ending only in *im* in the Accuſat. Caſe end only in *i* in their Abl. Caſe: as Accuſat. *vim*, Abl. *vi*. So Accuſ. *ravim*. Abl. *ravi*.

Yet *Liv.* hath *Superato Bœte amne*, from *Bœtim*. *Boeth.* l. 3. *de Conſ. Phil. Carm.* 12. hath *longâ ſite perditus*, from *ſitim*: but by Poetical licence, as ſaith *Murmelius*. *Perſ. Sat.* 5. hath, *Tibi tortâ cannabe fulto Cœna ſit in trauſtro*: from *cannabim*.

Words of a *Greek Original* increaſing in the Gen. Caſe, and having two Terminations in the Accuſ. one in *em*, and another in *im*, (as *Thetis*, Gen. *Thetidos*, Acc. *Thetidem* and *Thetim*) rather have *e* than *i* (as *Thetide*, rather than *Theti*.) So *Daphnide*, not *Daphni*, &c. Becauſe the Ablat. follows the Dat. (not the Accuſ.) which in Greek words are the ſame: the Dative ſtanding for both.

Yet Plaut. Epid. 1. 1. *hath Theti in the Abl.* Tum ille prognatus Theti, &c.

Arare in *Cæſ.* l. 1. *Bel. Gal.* is not from *Araris*, which makes *Arari*: but from *Arar*, which he in the ſame Book uſeth. *Flumen eſt Arar, quod per fines Æduorum in Rhodanum influit.*

Voſſius to thoſe that end in *i* only adds *canalis* and *ſtrigilis*, l. 2. *de Analog.* c. 11. p. 297. proving, their Termination from *Quintil. Plin. Hor.* and adding as his Reaſon, *Quid mirum, quando Accuſativum, uti oſtenſum, per* im *efferunt?* Yet afterwards (ſee c. 12. p. 302. having from *Hor.* and *Cic.* proved, that there is *nave* and *navi*, as *navem* and *navim*, he adds, *etiam ut ſtrigilem & ſtrigilim dixêre, ſic ſtrigile & ſtrigili*; citing for *ſtrigile*, *Plin. Secund.*

Secund. out of *Chariſ.* as *Horace* for *ſtrigili.* I ſuppoſe he means that *ſtrigili* is now only in uſe, though *ſtrigile* were formerly uſed: or that it may be more ſafely uſed, as in deed he explicates himſelf, *p.* 303. ſaying, *Interim tutiùs ſtrigili per* i *uſurpatur.*

Nouns ending both in e *and* i *in their Abl. Sing.*

Of *Nouns that have both* e *and* i in their Abl. Caſe there are theſe ſorts.

1. Subſtantives, which have in their Accuſ. both *em* and *im*, have in their Ablat. both *e* and *i*: as Acc. *puppem* and *puppim*, Abl *puppe* and *puppi.*

There are alſo found ſometimes theſe Ablatives in *i* of words that have alſo a more uſual Ablat. in *e*, *viz.*

Claſſi, colli, fini, ſuſti,
Igni, imbri, vecti, poſti,
Orbi, ovi, civi, avi,
Ungui, parti, ſurſuri, navi,
Supellectili and *ſordi,*
With *occipiti* and *ſorti.*

Of theſe there be Examples in *Voſſ. de Analog.* c. 12. *Dznef. Schol.* lib. 1. cap. 13. and *Alvar. Inſtit. Gram.* pag. 211. *Cic. Fam.* 1. 9.—*Declaraſſet, ſe non potuiſſe me uno civi carere.* Cic. Fam. 1. 9. p. 7. *Signifero ſolet ex orbi*— Cic. in Arat. p. 603. *Nihil porrò igni vacuum videri poteſt.* Cic. Timæ. 4.

To theſe add *Veneri* in *Plaut. Pœn.* 1. 2. *Dignum* [*ſcil. diem*] *Veneri, pol, cui ſunt Aphrodiſia hodie.*

Others beſide are named, viz. *Affinitati, alipedi, angui, aſſi, cani, labi, luci, mani, mugili, nepti, ſtercori, tempori, veſperi*, but not with like Authentickneſs either for Author or Edition.

Thoſe Proper names of Places, *Carthagini, Sidoni, Lacedæmoni, Tiburi, Sicyoni, Anxuri*, &c. as alſo the Appellative *ruri*, miſtaken to be Datives, are *old Ablatives* in *i*, of words that have other uſual Ablatives in *e*. See *Voſſ. de Conſtruct.* c. 46.

2. *Adjectives of one Termination* in the Nominative have *e* and *i* in their Ablative: as Nom. *felix*: Abl. *felice* vel *felici.* Nom. *vetus*, Abl. *vetere* vel *veteri.* Nom. *recens.* Abl. *recente* vel *recenti.* Nom. *Arpinas*, Abl. *Arpinate* vel *Arpinati.* Though in this laſt ſort *e* is moſt uſual.

N. B. Hither refer *Participles* and *Participials* in *ns*: as Nom. *excellens*, Abl. *excellente* and *excellenti.* Nom. *ardens*, Abl. *ardente* and *ardenti*: unleſs they be put *Abſolute*, for then the Termination *e* is to be uſed, not *i*: as *Imperante Auguſto*, not *Imperanti.*

Hither alſo refer *vigil* and *artifex* uſed *Adjectively*, as being then found to have an Ablative alſo in *i.*

So *Stat. Achill. Aſpicit intentum vigiliq; hæc aure trahentem.* Ib. *Qualiter artifici victuræ pollice ceræ Accipiunt formas.*

So alſo *uber* and *degener*, *dives* and *locuples.*

For *Curtius l.* 3. hath *uberi* and *pingui ſolo.* And *Lucan.* l. 4.

Si

Si me degeneri ſtraviſſent facta ſub hoſte. Plin. l. 3. c. 1. *Diviti cultu.* And *Cic.* 3. *de Orat. Locupleti oratione.*

Laſtly, Hither refer *victrix* and *ultrix*, which have *e* and *i*. *Ovid.* 1. *Faſt. Dextrâ cecidit victrice.* Lucan. l. 1. *In ſua victrici converſum viſcera ferro.* And ſaith *Voſſius*, *Par ratio in* ultrix, *Priſciano teſte.*

But *par* the Adjective (as being anciently *paris*) hath only *pari*, as *par* the Subſtantive (for a mate or fellow) hath *pare*: and yet the Compounds *compar* and *impar* have both *e* and *i*.

And ſo Verbals in *trix* taken *Subſtantively* have only *e*: as *Nutrix, netrix, obſtetrix, &c.* See *Alvar.* p. 211. *Daneſ. Schol.* p. 50, 51. *Voſſ. Etym. Lat.* p. 47, 48. & *de Analog.* l. 2. c. 12.

3. Adjectives of the *Comparative Degree*, as well Maſculines and Feminines, as Neuters, have their Abl. in *e* and *i*; as Nom. *major* and *majus*, Abl. *majore* and *majori*.

Hence *Cæſ.* l. 2. *de Bel. civ. Majori cum fiduciâ pugnaverunt.* And *Sen. Ep.* 108. *Quantum majori impetu ad philoſophiam juvenis acceſſerim, quàm.*—— Indeed Maſcul. and Neut. anciently were both of one Termination in the Nom. whence *Priſcian.* l. 7. cites *Senatuſconſultum prior*; and *Bellum poſterior*, from the Ancients.

Though *e* is the more uſual Termination, eſpecially in the Maſc. and Femin. Gender, unleſs in Poets.

Of the Nom. and Accuſ. Plur. of the Third Declenſion in the Maſc. and Fem. Gender.

The *Nominative* and *Accuſative Plural* of the *Third Declenſion* in the Maſc. and Fem. Gender do end in *es*, as *Lapides, Virtutes.*

Anciently they did uſe a Termination in *eis*, as *omneis, Sardeis*, which again they contracted into *is*, as *omnis* and *Sardis.*

Hence *Cic. de Opt. Gen. Orat. Qualeis Aſia multos tulit.* Ib. *Vireis, Lacertos, ſanguinem quærunt.* Plaut. Amph. 5. 1. *Facit rectà in anguis impetum.* And *Epid.* 2. *Ipſum ante ædis conſpicor.* Ib. 3. 4. *Promerui, ut mihi omnes mortalis deceat agere gratias.* Plaut. Pœn. 5. 5. *Efferte fuſtis.*

Touching which it is exceeding difficult and operous, if poſſible, to give certain Rules; Authors following rather the judgment of the Sound by their ear, than any Rule. See *Gell. l.* 13. *c.* 19. Yet *Priſcian* attempts it, and gives *four Canons* about it, repeated by *Voſſius* and *Daneſius*, viz. That they end in *is*.

Voſſ. de Anal. l. c. 10. *Dan. Schol.* p. 55.

(1) Whoſe Genitive is like their Nominative, as *omnis*, and *naris.*

(2) Which are only Plurals, as *manes* and *tres.*

(3) Whoſe Nom. Sing. ends in *er*, and Abl. in *i*, as *acer* and *imber.*

(4) Which end in *ns*, or *rs*, as *mons* and *pars.*

Let the particular words be well marked, as they are met with. Such as theſe in *eis.*

Ardenteis, aureis, tereteis,
Forenſeis, vireis, qualeis, treis, &c.

And

And theſe in *is*,

Acris, adis, anguis, bidentis,
Mavis, omnis, mortalis, parentis,
Celeris, dulcis, fontis, pluris,
Salubris, litis, with *compluris,*
Tris, tenacis, urbis, imbris,
Sammatis, partis, & Decembris, &c.

Of the Nom. and Accuſ. Plur. of the Third Declenſ. in the Neut. Gend.

The *Nominative* and *Accuſative Plural* of the *Third Declenſion* in the *Neuter Gender* end ſometimes in *a*, and ſometimes in *ia*.

They end in *a*, whoſe Abl. Sing. ends only in *e*, as *capita* of *capite*; *onera* of *onere*; *gauſapa* of *gauſape*. So *hoſpita*, *ſoſpita*, *paupera*, of *hoſpite*, *ſoſpite*, *paupere*.

They end in *ia*, whoſe Abl. Sing. ends only in *i*, as *animalia* of *animali*; *fortia* of *forti*; or elſe in *e* and *i*, as *felicia* of *felice vel felici*. So *locupletia*, *divitia*, from *locuplete vel locupleti*, *divite vel diviti*.

Yet from this Rule there be ſome *Exceptions*.

(1) *Vetus* makes only *vetera*, and *uber ubera*, though they have *i* as well as *e*, in their Abl. Sing.

(2) *Bicorpor*, *tricorpor*, *unicolor*, & *verſicolor* have only *a* in the Nom. Plur. though they have *i* in their Abl. Sing.

This Termination in *a* comes from a Termination in *us* in the Nom. Sing. *bicorporus*, *verſicolorus*, &c.

(3) *Comparatives* have only *a* in their Nom. Plur. though they have both *e* and *i* in their Abl. Sing. as *majora*, *minora*.

The Ablative of theſe in *e* being the more uſual, they follow that Termination.

Yet *plus* hath *plura* and *pluria*, and thence are *complura* and *compluria*.

Aplusire whoſe Abl. is *aplusiri*, is alſo ſaid to have both *aplusira*, and *aplusiria*, but *aplustra* comes not of *aplusire*, but of *aplustrum* anciently uſed. See *Voſſ. de Analog.* l. 2. c. 13. *Daneſ. Schol.* p. 52.

Of the Gen. Caſe Plur. of the Third Declenſion.

The *Genitive Caſe Plural* of the *Third Declenſion* endeth generally in *um*, as *Lapidum*.

Yet there are ſundry *Words*, and *Kinds* of words, that do end in *ium*: for which there are theſe Rules.

Rule Firſt, Such as have *i*, or both *e* and *i*, in the Abl. Sing. have *ium* in their Gen. Plur. as *Turris*, *turri*, *turrium*. *Animal*, *animali*, *animalium*. *Fortis* & *forte*, *forti*, *fortium*. So *felix*, *felice vel felici*, *felicium*. *Imber*, *imbre* & *imbri*, *imbrium*. *Prudens*, *prudente* & *prudenti*, *prudentium*. *Concors*, *concorde* & *concordi*, *concordium*.

So *Gentiles* in *as*, as *Arpinâs*, *Fidenâs*, *Capenâs*, *noſtrâs*, *veſtrâs*, and, like them, *optimâs* & *ſummâs*, which from an old Nom. in *tis* form an Abl. in *ti*, and thence a Gen. Plur. in *tium*, as *Arpinatium*, *noſtratium*, *optimatium*, &c.

Yet

Yet from this Rule there are *Exceptions.*

1. Except. All *Comparatives have their Gen. Plur.* ending in *um*, as *major* & *majus, majorum*; except *plus plurium*, & *complu-ria complurium.*

Yet *Pliny* preferreth *complurum* before *complurium* (as *Voſſius* ſaith from *Chariſius*) againſt the uſe of the Ancients.

2 Except. *Words* ending in *fex*, compounded of *facio*, have their Gen Plur. ending in *um*, as *Artifex, artificum*; *opifex, opificum*; *carnifex, carnificum.*

Theſe, when taken Adjectively, have their Abl. in *e* and *i*; yet their Gen. Plur. ends only in *um*, probably that their Gen. Caſes might not be confounded with *Artificium*, *opificium*, &c. Subſtantives Singular of the Neuter Gender.

3. Except. Theſe *Particular words* in their Gen. Plur. end in *um.*

Memor, immemor, inops, uber,
Compos, impos, impuber, puber,
Dives, degener, congener, bicorpor,
Vetus, ſtrigilis, mugilis, tricorpor.

Vigilum is of *vigil* the Subſtantive, whoſe Abl. Sing. is *vigile.* Of *vigili*, the Abl. of *vigil* the Adjective is rather formed *vigilium.* See *Voſſ. de Analog.* l. 2. c. 14. p. 312.

Rule Second. *Subſtantives of two or more Syllables ending with two Conſonants*, have their Gen. Plur. ending in *ium*, as *Cohors, cohortium*; *parens, parentium.*

Likewiſe many *Adjectives uſed Subſtantively*, as *Serpens, ſerpentium*; *bidens, bidentium*: So *infans, infantium*; *adoleſcens, adoleſcentium*; *rudens, rudentium*; which taken Subſtantively have their Abl. in *e.*

Dos eſt magna parentium Virtus. *Hor. l. 3. Od. 24.*

Yet from this Rule there are *Exceptions.*

1. Except. Theſe Particular words, *Cœlebs, conſors, hyems, judex, ſenex*, have their Gen. Plur. ending in *um.*

2. Except. *Words* derived of *capio*, as *Auceps, forceps, manceps, municeps, particeps, princeps*, have their Gen. Plur. ending in *um.*

Yet Juſtin, *l. 1. from* princeps *formeth* principium.

In the moſt the reaſon may be to diſtinguiſh them from *Subſtantives* Sing. ending in *ium*: as *Aucupium, mancipium*, &c.

3. Except. *Latine* words formed of *Greek* ones ending in *ων* in Greek, have their Gen. Plur. ending in *um* in Latine: as *Arabs, Arabum, Æthiops, Æthiopum.* So *Calybs, Cyclops, Phalanx*; to which add theſe Monoſyllables, *gryps, lynx, ſphynx.*

Rule Third. Nouns ending in *er, es*, and *is* not increaſing in the Gen. Caſe Singul. have their Gen. Plur. ending in *ium*: as *Venter, ventrium*; *nubes, nubium*; *piſcis, piſcium.*

Piſces attritu ventrium coeunt. *Plin. l. 9. c. 20.*

So Greek words of the Second Declenſion of the Contracts: as *Syrtis, Syrtium*; *diœceſis, diœceſium.*

Hither

Hither refer *caro, carnium :* there having been anciently *hæc carnis, hujus carnis.*

Except. Yet from this Rule are excepted *juvenis, juvenum; canis, canum;* and *panis, panum,* if it be read in the Plur. Numb. in that Caſe.

Rule Fourth. Sundry *words of more Syllables than one* increaſing in the Gen. Caſe Singul. have *ium* in their Gen. Caſe Plur. viz. *Civitas, utilitas, hæreditas.* So *Samnis* and *Quiris.* Alſo *palus* and *fornax.*

Civitatium is in *Juſt.* l. 9. *utilitatium* in *Liv.* l. 45. *hæreditatium* in the *Pandects.* Notwithſtanding the Syncopated Termination *ium* is in theſe much the more uſual. So *Samnitium* is in *Liv.* l. 7. *Quiritium* in *Hor.* lib. 1. *Od.* 1. But their Nomin. Caſe formerly was *Samnitiũ* and *Quiritiũ:* ſo that theſe words may be reduced to the Third Rule. *Paludium* is in *Colum.* l. 3. c. 9. *fornacium* in *Plin.* l. 35. c. 14. Though *paludum* is alſo read in *Mela.* l. 3. c. 3. and *fornacum* in *Plin.* l. 34. c. 10.

Rule Fifth. Some words that are only Plurals have their Genitive ending in *ium:* as *manes, manium; penates, penatium; tres, trium;* and *mœnia, mœnium.* Alſo theſe two Singulars *Sal* (wit) and *vis,* have in their Gen. Plur. *ſalium* and *virium.*

Tres hath *trium* from the Greek τρεῖων. *Sales* (for *jeſts* or *conceits)* is ſo rarely found (though it be found, and in *Cicero)* in that ſenſe in the Singular Number, that it hath been taken for an only Plural. The Nom. Sing. of *vires* is *vis:* but that being made of *viris* by a *Syncope* and a *Craſis,* thence comes the Gen. Plur. *virium.* Of *mœnia, mœnium* ſee *Daneſ. Schol.* p. 53.

On the other ſide *opes, primores, lemures, cœlites, celeres, Luceres,* and *proceres* have *um* in the Gen. Plural.

Theſe words are taken to be Plurals only: but are all, or moſt, found to have Singulars. See my Explanations of *Quæ genus* on *Maſcula ſunt tantùm,* &c.

Celeres, Luceres, and *Proceres* come of *celer, Lucer,* and *procer,* out of uſe.

Rule Sixth. *Several ſorts of words of one Syllable* have their Gen. Plur. ending in *ium:* viz.

(1) Such Latine words in *x* as have a *Conſonant* before *x,* have their Gen. Plur. ending in *ium:* as *arx, calx, falx, lanx, merx.* Gen. *arcium,* &c.

(2) Some words of one Syllable that have a *Vowel* before *x,* have their Gen. Plur. ending in *ium:* as *nix, nox, faux, crux, trux.* Gen. *nivium, noctium,* &c.

The reſt make *um:* as

Grex, and *lex,* with *rex,* and *dux,*
Strix, vox, Phryx, with *Thrax* and *nux.*

Faucium *is read in* Plin. *l.* 21. *c.* 21. crucium *in* Tertul.

Nucum *is read in* Plin. *l.* 15. *c.* 22.

Alſo

Alſo *prex* and *frux* (out of uſe) have *precum* and *frugum*.

(3) Some words of one Syllable that end in a liquid Conſonant, have their Gen. Plur. ending in *ium*: as *par*, *parium*; *lar*, *larium*; *cor*, *cordium*.

Par hath *parium* as coming from *paris*: and thence *compar* hath *comparium*.

The reſt end in *um*: as *ren*, *renum*; *ſplen*, *ſplenum*; *fur*, *furum*.

But *mel*, *fel*, and *ſol* have no Gen. Caſe Plur.

(4) Some that end in *s pure* (with a Vowel before it) have their Gen. Plur. ending in *ium*: as *As*, *aſſium*; *mas*, *marium*; *vas*, *vadium*; *bes*, *beſſium*; *lis*, *litium*; *glis*, *glirium*; *dis*, *ditium*; *vis*, *virium*; *cos*, *cotium*; *dos*, *dotium*; *os*, * *oſſis*, *oſſium*; and *mus*, *murium*.

The reſt have *um*, viz. *pes*, *pedum* (whence *bipes*, *bipedum*) *præs*, *prædum*; *mos*, *morum*; *flos*, *florum*; *thus*, *thurum*; *crus*, *crurum*; *ſus*, *ſuum*; *grus*, *gruum*; *laus*, *laudum*; *fraus*, *frandum*; *bos*, *boum* (by a Syncope for *bovium*.)

Of *jus Cato* hath *jurum*, *Plautus jurium*: of which, *utrumque inſolens*, ſaith *Voſſius*. If *æs* and *rus* were to form a Gen. Plur. it ſhould be *ærum* and *rurum*, rather than *ærium* and *rurium*.

(5) All words that end in *s impure* (or having a Conſonant before it) have their Gen. Plur. in *ium*: as *Ars*, *artium*; *pars*, *partium*; *mons*, *montium*; *fons*, *fontium*; *pons*, *pontium*; *dens*, *dentium*; *trabs*, *trabium*; *urbs*, *urbium*.

Except *gryps*, *grypum*; *ſeps*, *ſepum*, which are originally Greek words. To which may be added *Sphynx*, *Sphyngum*.

1. Note. Many words in *ium* are found by a *Syncope* to have a Termination in *um*: as *Optimatûm* for *optimatium* uſed by *Cornel. Nepos*. *Summatûm* for *ſummatium* by *Plaut*. *Sontûm* for *ſontium* by *Stat*. *Agreſtûm* for *agreſtium*: and *cœleſtûm* for *cœleſtium* by *Virg*. *Volucrûm* for *volucrium* by *Plin*. *Cædûm* for *cædium* by *Silius*. *Sedûm* for *ſedium* by *Cic*. *Minſûm* for *menſium* by *Paul. J. C*. *Paludûm* for *paludium* by *Mela*. *Fornacûm* for *fornacium* by *Plin*. *Forûm* for *forium* by *Plaut*. *Larûm* for *larium* by *Varro*. *Oſſûm* for *oſſium* by *Apul*. *Murûm* for *murium* by *Cic*.

Utilitatûm, *civitatûm*, *hæreditatûm* are ordinary. So are the Syncopated Caſes of Participles: ſuch as *cadentûm*, *ſaventûm*, *furentûm*, *loquentûm*, *manentûm*, *natantûm*, *potentûm*, *precantûm*, *regnantûm*, *rudentûm*, *ſequentûm*, *ſilentûm*, *venientûm*, all in *Virgil*, and the like in others: and like theſe, *parentûm* and *quadrupedantûm*.

2. Note. Many words have in the Gen. Plur. one Termination in *ium*, and another in *orum*: as the names of Feaſts, *Floralia*, *Floralium* and *Floraliorum*; *Agonalia*, *Agonalium* and *Agonaliorum*; *Saturnalia*, *Saturnalium* and *Saturnaliorum*, &c.

Of theſe the Termination in *um* is formed from a Nom. Caſe in *e*; v. g. *Florale*, &c. That in *orum* is formed from a Nom. Caſe ſing. in *ium*; v. g. *Floralium*, &c. The

* *And by Analogie* os, oris, orium, *if it were to be uſed. Mr.* Farnaby *ſaith* pus, purum.

The like may be ſaid of *alvearium* and *alveariorum*; the firſt from *alvear* and *alveare*, the ſecond from *alvearium*. So of *exemplarium* from *exemplar*, and *exemplariorum* from *exemplarium* (turned by *Ignatius* into Ἐξεμπλάριον.) So of *Vectigalium* and *vectigaliorum*; *ancilium* and *anciliorum*; *ſponſalium* and *ſponſaliorum*; *viridium* and *viridiorum*; *conclavium* and *conclaviorum*, it may be ſaid, the ſeveral Terminations in the Gen. Plur. are formed from ſeveral Terminations in the Nom. Singular: it being not unuſual for words to have ſuch variety of Terminations. For example, *Milliare* and *milliarium* are both in *Cic. Torcular* and *torcularium* in *Cato*; and *Lupanar* and *lupanarium*. So *A. Gell.* hath *vulgaris* and *vulgarius*. *Turpilius* hath both *ſingularis* and *ſingularius*, as *Voſſius* from *Nonius* tells us.

Epiſt. ad Trall.

So again Greek words in *ma* have two Genitives, one in *um*, from the Nom. Sing. in *ma*, of the Greek Termination; and one in *orum*, from a Nom. Sing. in *um*, of a Latine Termination: as *Poematum* from *hoc poema*, and *poematorum* from *hoc poematum*, &c.

Sometimes Greek words have their Greek Termination written in Latine letters: as *Hereſiôn*, *Epigrammatôn*, *Metamorphoſiôn*.

Of the Dat. Caſe Plur. of the Third Declenſion.

The Dative Caſe Plural of the Third Declenſion regularly ends in *ibus*, as *lapidibus*.

By this Termination *ibus* the Dative Caſe Plural of the *Third* Declenſion is diſtinguiſhed from the Dat. Plur. of the *Fifth*, which ends in *ebus*; and of the *Fourth* too, which though it hath *ibus* (as being derived from this Declenſion) yet it hath not *ibus* only, as this hath. *Bus*, which is ordinarily given for the Termination of this Caſe, is common to all the Three Declenſions; and to thoſe alſo of the *Firſt* that end in *abus*. For *abus*, *ebus*, *ibus*, *obus*, *ubus*, all end in *bus*.

Bobus and *bubus*, which differ from this Termination, are contracted of *bovibus*. *Voſſ. de Arte Gram.* l. 2. c. 15. So *Subus* is ſaid for *Suibus*, which *Cicero* hath l. 5. *de Fin.*

Quinquatriis is from *quinquatria*, *quinquatriorum*: *Quinquatribus* is from *quinquatria*, *quinquatrium*, or from *quinquatrus*, as *fructibus* from *fructus*.

Neuter Greek words in *ma*, beſides their Dative in *ibus*, have another in *is*: but that is formed as from a Nom. in *um*.

For example, *Poematis* is formed from *hoc poematum*, as *poematibus* from *hoc poema*. And ſo 'tis in the reſt. Not to note, that theſe kind of words have a formation of the *Firſt Declenſion*. Whence we read of *Diademam dedit*, in *Pompon. Cum ſervili Schemâ*, in *Plaut.* and *exemplar impetratæ Schemæ*, in *Sueton.* of which way of forming, thoſe Terminations in *is* may be ſome remains. See *Daneſ. Schol.* l. 1. c. 13.

Some-

Sometimes amongſt the Ancients there is met withal a Dative of a Greek Termination in *ſin* (i. e. *σι* with *ν* added to it): as in *Dryaſin*, *Hamadryaſin*, *Etheſin*, *Schemaſin*. But theſe, as being not *Latine* words, croſs not our Rule: and as being *rare*, are only to be obſerved, not followed.

Of the Gen. Caſe Sing. of the Fourth Declenſion.

The Genitive Caſe Singular of the Fourth Declenſion regularly ends in *ûs*: as *manûs*.

Yet ſome words now of the *Fourth* Declenſion anciently were alſo of the *Second* Declenſion; and of them remains a Gen. Caſe in *i*: as *ornati* of *ornatus*, *tumulti* of *tumultus*.

Hence *Ter. Eun.* 2. 2. *Quid iſtuc inquam ornati eſt?* And *Pherm.* 1. 3. *Ubi ejus adventi venit in mentem.* And *Adelph.* 5. 4. *Hoc fructi pro labore ab his fero.* And *And.* 2. 2. *In ædibus nihil ornati, nihil tumulti.* Of the ſame ſtamp are theſe cited by *Voſſius* from *Nonius*.

Senati, ſumti, exerciti, æſti,
Aſpecti, gemiti, piſcati, quæſti,
Geli with *victi, ſtrepiti*, and *lucti*,
Salti, parti, porti, ſoni, fluctı.

Huc commigravit ſui quæſti cauſâ. Plaut. Pœn. *Prol.* 95.

Again, ſome words now of the *Fourth* Declenſion anciently were of the *Third*; and of them remains a Gen. Caſe in *is*: as *anuis of anus*.

Hence *Ter. He.* 2. 3. *Ejus anuis causâ opinor, quæ erat mortua.* Of the ſame ſtamp are *Senatuis* for *Senatûs*; *domuis* for *domûs*; *fluctuis* for *fluctûs*, which *A. Gell.* ſaith *M. Varro*, and *P. Nigidius*, learned Romans did uſe. So alſo *rituis* for *ritûs*; *fructuis* for *fructûs*; *victuis* for *victûs*; and *graduis* for *gradûs*; which *Voſſius* citeth from their Authors, *De Analog.* l. 2. c. 17. See alſo *Paneſ. Schol.* l. 1. c. 19.

Of the Genitive Caſe in *uis* is made the Regular Genitive in *ûs* by a Craſis, whence the Termination is long.

Of the Dat. Caſe Sing. of the Fourth Declenſion.

The *Dative Caſe Singular of the Fourth* Declenſion regularly ends in *ui*, as *manui*.

Yet by an *Apocope i* is cut off from many Datives of this Declenſion, and for *ui* is read *u*: as *ornatu* for *ornatui*.

If veſtitu be not there the Abl. Caſe, as ſome think.

So *Ter. Ad.* 1. 1. *Veſtitu nimio indulges.* Virg. Æn. 1. *Parce metu Cytheræa.* Cæſ. in Dolab. act. 3. *In ædibus ſaniſque poſita, & honori erant & ornatu.* Tacit. Annal. 14. *Cruciatu, aut præmio cuncta pervia eſſe.* Yea, *quibus ſubito impetu, ac latrocinio parricidarum reſiſtat*, is *Cicero's*, ſaith *Voſſius*. Of the ſame ſtamp is *victu, concubitu, adſpectu*, for *victui, concubitui, adſpectui* in *Virg. Exercitu* for *exercitui* in *Varro. Curſu* for *curſui* in *Veget. Anu* and *victu* for *anui* and *victui* in *Lucil. Uſu* for *uſui* in *Lucret. Dominatu* for *dominatui* in *Cæſ. Luxu* for *luxui* in *Saluſt.* & *Tacit. Venatu* for *venatui*, *curru* for *currui* in *Virg. Quæſtu* & *cultu* for *quæſtui* & *cultui*

cultui in *Plaut.* *Delectu* for *delectui* in *Liv.* See *Schrevel.* in *Ter. Ad.* 1. 1. *Farnab. Gram.* p. 14. *Alvar. Inſtit. Gram.* p. 217. *A. Gell.* l. 14. c. 16. *Voſſ. de Analog.* l. 2. c. 18.

Of the Abl. Caſe Sing. of the Fourth Declenſion.

The Ablative Caſe Singular of the Fourth Declenſion regularly ends in *u*: as *manu.*

Impete is not, as ſome would have it, the Ablat. Caſe of *impetus*, but of *impes*, whoſe Gen. *impetis* is in *Lucret.* l. 6. and Abl. *impete* is in *Ovid Met.* 3. See *my Explanations of Quæ genus*, on *Sunt Diptota*, &c.

Of the Gen. Caſe Plur. of the Fourth Declenſion.

The Genitive Caſe Plural of the Fourth Declenſion regularly ends in *uum*: as *manuum.*

Of *uum* in this Caſe by a *Syncope* is made *ûm.*

Hence *currûm* for *curruum* in *Virg. Æn.* 6. *nurûm* for *nuruum* in *Virg. Æn.* 12. and *paſſûm* for *paſſuum* in *Martial.* l. 2. ep. 5.

Of the Dat. Caſe Plur. of the Fourth Declenſion.

The Dative Caſe Plural of the Fourth Declenſion moſt uſually ends in *ibus*: as *manibus.*

Yet (1) ſome words of this Declenſion end in *ubus*: as

Specus, arcus, artus
Lacus, tribus, partus.

Hence *Hor.* 5. *Epod. Per liberos te, ſi vocata partubus.* Ovid. 4. Faſt. *Præmia de lacubus proxima muſta tuis.* Virg. Ep. de Livore. *Et totum bibit artubus cruorem.*

Some add *acubus, quercubus, ficubus*, which yet *Alvarus* thinks to be no where found: no nor *acibus, quercibus, ficibus*: for the laſt of which *ficis* of the Second Declenſion is in uſe, and *præplacet Plinio*, as Mr. *Farnaby* ſaith, *Syſtem. Gram.* p. 15.

2. Some words of this Declenſion end both in *ibus* and *ubus*: as *quæſtus, genu, portus, veru.*

Quæſtibus and *quæſtubus*, *genibus* and *genubus* are read in *Ovid* and *Seneca*, *portibus* and *portubus* in *Cæſ. Bell. Civ.* where yet, ſaith *Voſſius*, for *portibus*, the Manuſcripts read *portubus.* *Veribus* is read in *Virg.* 1. *Æn. Pars in fruſta ſecant, Veribuſque trementia figunt.* *Verubus* is read in *Ovid.* 6. *Met. Pars verubus ſtridet.* See *Daneſ. Schol.* l. 1. c. 14.

Of the Gen. Caſe Sing. of the Fifth Declenſion.

The Genitive Caſe Singular of the Fifth Declenſion now regularly ends in *ei*: as *diei.*

Anciently there were other Terminations of it.

Firſt, Sometimes the Termination of the Genitive was the ſame with that of the Nominative, namely *es.*

In this reſpect it was ſo with Nouns of this Declenſion, as with Pariſyllabical Nouns in *is* of the Third Declenſion, from whence probably this Declenſion was formed.

Hence that of *Cicero pro Sextio* relating the words *Conſulis adventûs*, as *H. Stephanus* thinks, *Equites verò daturos illius diei pœnas.* So *Lucret.* lib. 4.— *Rabies unde illæ hæc germina ſurgunt.*

Second-

Secondly, Sometimes *ei* was first contracted into *ei*, and then into *i*.

As *Ulyſſei* of *Ulyſſeus* is firſt contracted into *Ulyſſei* (triſyllab.) and then into *Ulyſſi*.

Hence that of *Virg.* 1. *Æn.* as ſome read it, *Munera, lætitiámque dii.* And that of *Corn. Nepos*, *Quæ quidem res & illis contemnentibus pernicii, & huic deſpecto ſaluti fuit.* And ſo the reſt which are read in the ſame Termination in ancient Authors and Manuſcripts, viz. *progenii, acii, luxurii, ſpecii, fidii, famii* for *famei* of *fames*, ſometimes of the Fifth Declenſion. See *Gell.* l. 9. c. 19.

Thirdly, Sometimes *i* was by an Apocope cut off from *ei* in the Genitive Caſe.

Hence that of *Salluſt. Vix decimâ parte die reliquâ*; and *dubitavit acie pars*; and *Et jam die veſper erat*; and *At indè nullâ munitionis aut requie morâ proceſſit ad oppidum.* And that of *Auſon. Carm. de Roſâ. Ad primos radios interitura die.* And that of *Ovid.* 3. *Met. Prima fide vociſque ratæ tentamina ſumpſit*; and lib. 7. *Meditatáque pene reliqui Tentamenta fide.* And *ib. ver.* 742. *Cui non iſta fide ſatis experientia ſano Magna foret ſatis?* And l. 6. *Utque fide pignus dextras utraſque poposcit.* And that of *Horace*, 1. *Carm.* 2. *Od. Libra die ſomnique pares ubi fecerit umbras.*

The Dative Caſe Singular of the Fifth Declenſion regularly ends in *ei*. *Of the Dat. Caſe Sing of the Fifth Declenſion.*

Yet this Dative is ſometimes found to end in *e*, the *i* being cut off by an Apocope.

Hence *Lucil.* l. 1. *Ætati faciéque tuæ. Hor.* l. 1. *Sat.* 3. *Prodiderit commiſſa fide.* And this Dative in *e* was uſed by thoſe, *qui puriſſimè locuti ſunt*, ſaith *Gell. Noct. Att.* l. 9. c. 14. See *Daneſ. Schol.* p. 62. *Voſſ. de Analog* l. 2. c. 19.

CHAP. II.

Of the Comparing of Adjectives.

AFter the Learner is perfected in the formings of Nouns Subſtantives, then let him be made skilful in the forming of *Regular Compariſons* of Adjectives; ſo as that hearing one Poſitive Degree of any compared Adjective, he can inſtantly form thereof a Comparative and a Superlative in any Caſe, Gender, or Number: as *Doctus, doctior, doctiſſimus. Docta, doctior, doctiſſima. Doctum, doctius, doctiſſimum*, &c.

That he may do this with greateſt eaſe and readineſs, (having firſt taught him to decline the Poſitive alone, ſo as that he

can either decline it in both Numbers through all Terminations, viz. *Doctus, docta, doctum*; *Docti, doctæ, docti*, &c. or (which is the harder work) in one ſingular Termination, viz. *Doctus, docti, docto*, &c. *docta, doctæ, doctæ*, &c. *Doctum, docti, docto*, &c.) practiſe him firſt to decline only the Comparative together with the Poſitive according to the ſeveral Terminations of it; thus, Nom. *Doctus, doctior*; Gen. *Docti, doctioris*; Dat. *Docto, doctiori*, &c Nom. *Docta, doctior*; Gen. *Doctæ, doctioris*; Dat. *Doctæ, doctiori*, &c. Nom. *Doctum, doctius*; Gen. *Docti, doctioris*; Dat. *Docto, doctiori*, &c. then all the three degrees together, firſt in the Maſculine, then in the Feminine, and ſo in the Neuter Gender throughout all Caſes of both Numbers; thus, *Doctus, doctior, doctiſſimus. Docti, doctioris, doctiſſimi*, &c. *Docta, doctior, doctiſſima. Doctæ, doctioris, doctiſſimæ*, &c. *Doctum, doctius, doctiſſimum. Docti, doctioris, doctiſſimi*, &c. and laſt of all, all the three Degrees together in all Caſes of both Numbers, and through all the Genders of every Caſe together; thus, Nom. *Doctus, doctior, doctiſſimus*; *Docta, doctior, doctiſſima*; *Doctum, doctius, doctiſſimum.* Gen. *Docti, doctioris, doctiſſimi*; *doctæ, doctioris, doctiſſimæ*; *docti, doctioris, doctiſſimi*, &c. And ſo let him go on to do Adjectives of other Terminations, as *tener, felix, prudens, vetus*, &c.

When the Scholar hath attained to a competent readineſs in the forming of *Regular* and *Perfect Compariſons*, let him then proceed to, and be made acquainted with thoſe Compariſons that are *Irregular*, and *Defective* or *Redundant*. Touching which, becauſe it may be Uſeful both to Teachers and Learners, I will here ſet down ſuch a Collection of Rules and Obſervations, as I gathered for my private uſe, beginning firſt with the Irregular Compariſons.

Of Irregular Compariſons.

Celeriſſimus *found in* Manlius *and* Ennius *is from* celeris.

Irregular Compariſon is, when Degrees are formed not according to Rule.

1. Poſitives in *er*, form a ſuperlative Degree, by aſſuming unto them *rimus*, as *Pulcher, pulcherrimus*.

2. Theſe three *facilis, ſimilis*, and *humilis* form their Superlative by changing *is* into *limus*; as *facilis, facillimus*; *ſimilis, ſimillimus*; *humilis, humillimus*. So the Compounds of *facilis* and *ſimilis*; *difficilis, difficillimus*; *diſſimilis, diſſimillimus*. Of *imbecillis* is formed *imbecillimus*; though there be alſo *imbecilliſſimus* of *imbecillus*.

3. Adjectives derived of *dico, loquor, volo, facio*, form their Comparative and Superlative Degrees as of Poſitives in *ens*, as *Maledicus, maledicentior, maledicentiſſimus. Magniloquus, magniloquentior, magniloquentiſſimus. Benevolus, benevolentior, benevolentiſſimus. Magnificus, magnificentior, magnificentiſſimus.* But *mirificus* hath *mirificiſſimus*.

4. Adje-

4. Adjectives ending in *us* pure, form a Periphraſtical Comparative and Superlative, by adding *magis* or *maxime*, and *minus* or *minime*, to their Poſitive degree, as *Pius*; *magis pius*; *maxime pius*. *Aſſiduus*; *magis aſſiduus*; *maxime aſſiduus*. *Idoneus*; *minus idoneus*; *minime idoneus*. *Reus*; *minus reus*; *minime reus*.

Note, other Adjectives are in Authors compared according to this Periphraſtical way: but theſe Adjectives are not ordinarily compared any other way.

Yet, though it be not ordinary, there may be found Comparatives and Superlatives regularly formed of this ſort of Adjectives: as *Idoneïor* of *idoneus*. *Arduïor* of *arduus*. *Innoxior* of *innoxius*. *Induſtrior* of *induſtrius*. So *Egregiiſſimus* of *egregius*. *Perpetuiſſimus* of *perpetuus*. *Exiguiſſimus* of *exiguus*. *Vacuiſſimus* of *vacuus*. Alſo *Strenuior* and *ſtrenuiſſimus* of *ſtrenuus*. *Aſſiduior* and *aſſiduiſſimus* of *aſſiduus*. Thence *aſſiduiſſime* in Cic. in Brut. *Aſſiduiſſime autem mecum fuit Dionyſius*. *Piiſſimus* of *pius*, which are not but with great warineſs to be uſed. See *Voſſ. de Analog.* l. 2. c. 27.

5. Theſe ſingular words are alſo irregularly compared.

Bonus,	*melior,*	*optimus,*
Malus,	*pejor,*	*peſſimus,*
Magnus,	*major,*	*maximus,*
Parvus,	*minor,*	*minimus,*
Multus, Multa, Multum,	*plus,*	*plurimus, plurima, plurimum,*
Vetus,	*veterior,*	*veterrimus,* of *veter.*
citer, *	*citerior,*	*citimus,* †
inferus,	*inferior,*	*infimus,* & *imus,*
Exterus, & *Exter,*	*exterior,*	*extremus,* & *extimus,*
ſuperus,	*ſuperior,*	*ſupremus,* & *ſummus,*
poſterus,	*poſterior,*	*poſtremus,* & *poſtumus,*
nequam,	*nequior,*	*nequiſſimus.*

* Voſſius, ſaith Cato, uſed it: but that now it is almoſt grown obſolete.

† Cituma is read in Cic. 1. de Rep. Deduc orationem tuam de cœlo ad hæc cituma. *ſc. by an Antiſtœchon, for* citima, *as we find* maxume *for* maxime.

And thus far of *Compariſons Irregular*.

N. Before the learning of either in Latine, it might be uſeful to be taught the doing of Both in Engliſh: as, Reg. *Brave, braver, braveſt. Sweet, ſweeter, ſweeteſt.* Irreg. *Good, better, beſt. Bad, worſe, worſt*, &c.

Now follows *Compariſon Defective*.

Of Defective Compariſons.

Defective Compariſon, is, when any one of the three Degrees is wanting.

Theſe are ſaid to want the *Poſitive Degree.*

Prior, primus, from the obſolete *pris.*
Ocior, ociſſimus, from ὠκὺς ὠκίων.
Potior, potiſſimus,
Deterior, deterrimus, } from *potis, deter, ulter* grown out of uſe.
Ulterior, ultimus,
Penitior, penitiſſimus.
Interior, intimus, from *inter.*
Propior, proximus, from *propis* or *propus.*
Diutior, diutiſſimus. Of which word yet *Voſſius* ſaith he remembers not that he ever read it.

Theſe are ſaid to want the *Comparative Degree.*

Apricus, apriciſſimus.	*Falſus, falſiſſimus.*
Bellus, belliſſimus.	*Fidus, fidiſſimus.*
Conſultus, conſultiſſimus.	*Inclytus, inclytiſſimus.*
Meritus, meritiſſimus,	*Invitus, invitiſſimus.*
Novus, noviſſimus.	*Perſuaſus, perſuaſiſſimus.*
Nuperus, nuperrimus.	*Sacer, ſacerrimus.*
Diverſus, diverſiſſimus.	

¶ Yet there may be found in *Gellius* both *novius* and *diverſius.* Hence *Plin.* l. 12. c. 9. *Pretia nulli diverſiora. Juſtin.* l. 16. hath, *Ut eos ſibi fidiores redderet.* Our *Dunæus* in his *Prælect. ad Lyſiam* hath *bellius* an Adverb. And *Petron. Nihil eſt hominum ineptâ perſuaſione falſius. Cicero* hath *invitius* an Adverb. *Quem ego paullo ſciebam invitius ad hoc ſermonis genus accedere. De Orat.* l. 3. 123. 2. So *inviſus*, formerly thought to want a Comparative, hath *inviſior*, in *Cic. Off. l.* 2. *S.* 9. *Quo enim quis verſutior & callidior eſt, hoc inviſior, & ſuſpectior*—— So *Sollicitus* hath *ſollicitior.* Cic. Fam. 10. 18. *Sollicitiorem certe hominem non ſuis contractis, neminem puto fuiſſe.*

Which yet I do not recommend to be uſed.

Hither may be referred theſe Nouns of which there are Superlatives read, *Excluſus, excluſiſſimus, occluſus, occluſiſſimus.* (Plaut. Ciſt. 1. 1.) *par, pariſſimus,* and alſo theſe *Pronouns, tuus, tuiſſimus, ipſe, ipſiſſimus,* uſed by *Plaut.* in *Trin.* in imitation of *Ariſtophanes*, ſaying αὐτότα] from αὐτός.

Theſe are ſaid to want the *Superlative Degree.*

Adoleſcens, adoleſcentior.	*Infinitus, infinitior.*
Communis, communior.	*Juvenis, junior.*
Dives, divitior.	*Longinquus, longinquior.*
Declivis, declivior.	*Opimus, opimior.* †
Dexter, dexterior. *	*Proclivis, proclivior.*
Grandis, grandior.	*Propinquus, propinquior.*
Ingens, ingentior.	*Remiſſus, remiſſior.*
Salutaris, ſalutarior.	*Satur, ſaturior.*
Siniſter, ſiniſterior.	*Senex, ſenior.*
Supinus, ſupinior.	*Taciturnus, taciturnior.*

* Dextimus *and* Siniſtimus *ſignifie no more, than* dexter *and* ſiniſter. *See* Alvar.

† Gell. *l.* 5. *c.* 14.

¶ Yet

¶ Yet *Plaut. Curc.* 1. 1. hath *taciturniſſimus.* And *Cicero, divitiſſimus.* l. 1. *de Div.* c. 36. 448. b. Of *dirus* is read *dirius. Cic. de Div.* l. 2. c. 15. *Quibus nihil videtur eſſe dirius.*

Theſe want both the *Poſitive* and the *Superlative Degrees.*

Viz. *Satior, anterior, licentior, ſequior, alſior.* Whither may be referred *Punior, Neronior, Cinædior,* of which as there is no Superlative read, ſo no Poſitive, but a Noun Subſtantive, viz. *Pœnus, Nero, Cinædus.*

Nullus me eſt hodie Pœnus punior. Plaut. Pœn.

Nihil quietius, nihil alſius. Cic. Att. 4. 8. 5. 2. 31.

Some want both *Poſitive* and *Comparative*; as *Victoriſſimus, Patruiſſimus,* and *Plautiniſſimus,* &c. which are not imitable.

O patrue mi patruiſſime. Plaut. Pœn. 5. 4. 24.

And thus far of *Compariſon Defective,* now follows *Compariſon Redundant.*

Of Redundant Compariſons.

Redundant Compariſon is, when any one degree hath various formations, which happens moſtly in the Superlative degree.

Sometimes there are *two Superlatives* of one Poſitive, as *Extremus* and *extimus* of *exterus. Infimus* and *imus* of *Inferus. Maturiſſimus* and *maturrimus* of *maturus.* See *Voſſ. de Analog.* l. 2. c. 25. *Piiſſimus* and *pientiſſimus* of *pius. Poſtremus* and *poſtumus* of *poſterus. Supremus* and *ſummus* of *ſuperus.*

Sometimes of a Superlative Degree there is formed a new *Comparative* or *Superlative*: as *Proximior* of *proximus. Extremius* and *extremiſſimus* * of *extremus. Minimiſſimus* † of *minimus. Poſtremius* and *poſtremiſſimus* of *poſtremus. Peſſimiſſimus* of *peſſimus.*

In theſe, whereof there are Examples in *Voſſ. de Analog.* l. 2. c. 26. ſome later *Latines* have imitated ſome *Greeks.* For in *Epheſ.* 3. 8. we read ἐλαχιςότερος from ἐλάχιςος· and ſo in *Xenoph.* ἑκατόταλος from ἕκαλος, who yet are not without great warineſs to be followed therein.

* Extremiſſimus *is uſed by* Lipſius, *l.* 2. de Cruce, *c.* 12.

† Minimiſſimus *by* Jan. Douſa Plautin. Explic. *l.* 3. *c.* 23. Nullum animal in terris homine poſtremius. *Appul. De Deo Socrat.*

After this Account of *Defective* and *Redundant*, as well as *Irregular Compariſons*, it may perhaps not be ungrateful to the learning Reader to have ſome account of *Adjectives* that are *not compared at all*, unleſs Periphraſtically by *magis* and *maxime*, or *minus* and *minime.*

Adjectives not compared are

Cicur, claudus, canus, calvus,
Degener, diſpar, almus, ſalvus,
Egenus, memor, magnanimus, mirus,
Jejunus, criſpus, unicus, delirus,
Canorus, balbus, ferus, and *vetulus,*
Sylveſtris, mediocris, and *edentulus.*

Voſſ. de Analog. l. 2. c. 22. ſaith, *Opimus* hath no Comparative or Superlative; but *Gell.* l. 5. c. 14. hath *membra opimiora.*

Beſides theſe particular words, there be many ſorts of Adjectives, which Grammarians ſay are not compared.

1. Gentiles, as *Romanus, Græcus, Athenienſis.*
2. Poſſeſſives, as *Fraternus, herilis, muliebris, caſtrenſis.*
3. Numerals, as *ſeptem, ſeptimus, ternarius, tertianus.*
4. Diminutives, as *tenellus, tantillus, tantulus.*
5. Materials, as *Aureus, æreus, lapideus, ligneus.*
6. Temporals, as *Matutinus, heſternus, biennis.*
7. Compounds of *fero* and *gero*, as *Salutifer, corniger.*
8. Words ending in the Terminations following.
   1. *bundus*, as *moribundus, cunctabundus.*
   2. *imus*, as *bimus, trimus, maritimus.*
   3. *ivus*, as *deliberativus.*
   4. *plex*, as *duplex, triplex.*
   5. *fer*, as *campeſter, ſylveſtr.*

¶ Yet *Ramus* owns *feſtivior*, and *feſtiviſſimus* of *feſtivus*, and *ſimplicius* of *ſimplex*, which he ſaith *Quintilian* thought well of; And *Voſſius* alſo excepts *multiplex*, l. 2. *de Anal. c.* 27. And others may find other Exceptions, which whether in this, or in any thing elſe, ſo they be upon good authority, I ſhall not gainſay.

CHAP. III.

Of the Forming of Verbs.

THE Scholar being perfected in the forming of Nouns and comparing of Adjectives, the next thing that I would have him well grounded in, is the *Forming of Verbs*; in the performing of which work ſeveral Teachers have ſeveral ways. That which I practiſed with no ill ſucceſs, is as followeth.

Firſt, Make the Scholar underſtand what *Tenſes* in all Moods are formed of the *Preſent Tenſe*, and what of the *Preterperfect Tenſe*: namely that of the *Preſent Tenſe* of the Indicative Mood are formed the Preterimperfect and Future Tenſe of the ſame Mood; the Preſent and Preterimperfect Tenſes of all other Moods; the Gerunds and Participles of the Preſent Tenſe and of the Future in *dus*. And of the *Preterperfect Tenſe* of the Indicative Mood are formed the Preterpluperfect Tenſe of the ſame Mood; The Preterperfect; Preterpluperfect, and Future Tenſes of all other Moods; The Supines and Participles of the Preter Tenſe, and Future in *rus*. As the Preſent Tenſe Active. *Amo, amabam, amabo; ama, amato; amem, amarem, amare, amandi, amando, amandum, amans.* Preterperfect. *Amavi, amaveram, amaverim, amaviſſem,*

amaviſſem, amavero, amaviſſe, amaturum eſſe, amatum, amatu, amaturus. So Preſ. Paſſive. *Amor, amabar, amabor; amare, amator; amaris, amareris, amari, amandus.* Preterperf. *Amatus ſum vel fui, amatus eram vel fueram, amatus ſim vel fuerim, amatus eſſem vel fuiſſem, amatus ero vel fuero, amatum eſſe vel fuiſſe, amatum iri, vel amandum eſſe, amatus.*

And here it were not amiſs to acquaint the Learner what part of the Verb is fixed in the formation of it: as *am* in *amo*, *doc.* in *doceo*, &c. and what part of it is moveable: as *o* in *amo*; *eo* in *doceo*, &c. and how far thoſe motions are regular, and how far they are irregular; ſometimes the *o* being only moved, and ſometimes both the *o* and the Vowel foregoing it. For helps to which there are Tables of Formation publiſhed by ſeveral Grammarians, ſo that it may be ſufficient for me to refer to them.

When the Learner knows in what order the Verb is to be formed, and what Tenſes each of other, then let him begin the Forming of it with the Latine before the Engliſh; and together with the Verb, naming alſo the Nominative Caſe of the Perſonal Pronoun, wherewith it agrees, thus: *Ego amo*, I love; *tu amas*, thou loveſt; *ille amat*, he loveth; *nos amamus*, we love; *vos amatis*, ye love; *illi amant*, they love: and ſo throughout all Moods and Tenſes of the Active Voice.

To prepare him for this, and for other purpoſe, it will be highly beneficial to teach him to form Engliſh Verbs alone throughout all Moods and Tenſes, Numbers and Perſons thus: Ind. Preſ. Sing. Num. and firſt Perſ. *I love*, or *do love*. Pr. Imp. *I loved*, or *did love*. Fut. *I ſhall*, or *will love*.

Then let him go over the Active Voice again in the ſame order, with the Latine ſtill before the Engliſh, but naming only one Perſon of a Tenſe at a time, and then proceeding to the next, thus: *Ego amo*, I love; *ego amabam*, I loved, or did love, *&c.*

When he hath in this order gone over all the Perſons of all the Examples of the four Conjugations, giving the Engliſh for the Latine, then let him in the ſame order go over them all again, only giving now the Latine for the Engliſh, or ſetting the Engliſh before the Latine: thus, I love, *ego amo*; thou loveſt, *tu amas*, &c. and, I love, *ego amo*; I loved or did love, *ego amabam*: and ſo through all Moods and Tenſes, Numbers and Perſons. And let not this exerciſe be left off, till he be exact in it.

When the Active Voice is gained, then proceed to the Paſſive, and let that be got in the ſame manner and order, firſt Latine before Engliſh, then Engliſh before Latine; firſt all the Perſons of each Tenſe; then one Perſon only of a Tenſe at once; firſt the Preſent Tenſe, and all that come of it, then the Preterperfect Tenſe, and all that come of it likewiſe.

And when the Paſſive Voice is alſo thus gained, then go again to work to the getting of both Active and Paſſive together in the ſame manner and order, Latine before Engliſh, and Engliſh before Latine, beginning firſt with the Preſent Tenſe, and thoſe that come of it, and going on to the Preterperfect Tenſe, and thoſe that come of that.

When the Scholar is perfect in doing thus all the four Examples of this Grammar, then put him to other Examples, which he will within a while readily do, and *extempore*, being made thus perfect in theſe.

It will be very uſeful, after this practice, to put other Subſtantives, beſides the Pronouns, before the Verbs, and form them together with the Verbs: thus, *Ego pater amo*, &c. *Ego mater amor*, &c. *Tu magiſter doces*, &c. *Tu puella doceris*, &c. *Ille vir legit*, &c. *Illa dictio legitur*, &c. *Nos pueri audimus*; *Vos virgines ploratis*; *Illa regna perduntur*; or the like.

If the Teacher pleaſe, he may yet go on to put his Scholar to the adding of a caſual word after his Verb, chuſing ſometimes a Verb, that governeth an Accuſative, ſometimes one that governeth a Dative, and ſometimes one that governeth a Nominative after it: as, *Ego amo te*; *Tu places mihi*; *Horatius ſalutatur Poeta*; *Virgilius legitur à me.*

How great will be the benefit of this exerciſe, is ſo viſible, that I need not expatiate in the commendation of it. Briefly therein there is laid the main ground-work of the Latine Tongue. For in this exerciſe all the Three Concords are practically learned. That of the Nominative Caſe and the Verb, in the declining of the Verb with his Perſonal Pronoun. That of the Subſtantive with the Subſtantive, in declining together with the Pronoun Subſtantive another Noun Subſtantive. *Ego pater amo.* And that of the Subſtantive and Adjective, in the declining of the Preterperfect Tenſes of the Verbs Paſſives with Nominative Caſes of divers Genders; *Ego pater amatus ſum*; *tu mater amata es vel fuiſti*; *illud regnum everſum eſt vel fuit*, &c. And I need not ſay how great an inſight is given into the Government of Verbs, by adding a caſual word to the Verb, accordingly as I have ſhewn.

This exerciſe need not be done continuedly, and altogether, but one part of it at once, and that every morning after the ſaying of the *mornings part.* And in about a quarter of a years time it will, if well followed, be well learned.

After the Scholar is grown exact in the forming of Verbs Perfect and Regular, then let him be thoroughly inſtructed in the Verbs Defective and Irregular. The Irregular Verbs are competently done already in the Accidence. Of that which Grammarians deliver touching *Verbs Defective*, I ſhall here for the Uſe of the Learner, ſubjoyn this Collection with Notes upon it.

Of

Of Verbs Defective.

Indicat. Pref. Sing. *Aio, ais, ait.* Plur. *aiunt.* Preterimperf. *aiebam, aiebas, aiebat*; *aiebamus, aiebatis, aiebant.* Imperat. *ai.* Potent. Pref. Sing. *aias, aiat.* Plur. *aiamus, aiant.* Particip. *aiens.* *Aio.*

¶ For *aiebant* the Ancients ſaid *aibant.* *Probus* owns in the Preterperf. *ai, aiſti, ait.* And 'tis certain, that in *Tertullian* is read *aierunt.* *Voſſius* thinks the Ancients uſed yet more, ſuch as *aitis, aite*, and ſome others. See *Voſſ. Etymolog. Lat.* p. 132. and *Analog.* l. 3. p. 140.

Potent. Pref. & Preterperf. Sing. *Auſim, auſis, auſit.* Plur. *auſimus, auſint.* *Auſim.*

¶ *Auſim* is uſed for *audeam* and *auſus ſim.* It is made by a Syncope of *auſerim* formed from *auſi*, which anciently was the Preterperf. of *audeo*, as well as *auſus ſum*, which only is in uſe.

Indicat. Fut. *Salvebis.* Imperat. Sing. *Salve, ſalveto.* Plur. *Salvete, ſalvetote.* Infin. *Salvere.* *Salve.*

¶ *Plautus* uſeth *Salveo*, but in the Perſon of a Ruſtick; and in that is not to be followed, ſay Grammarians.

Imperat. Sing. *Ave, aveto.* Plur. *avete, avetote.* Infinit. *avere.* *Ave.*

¶ *Ave* conſidered as a word of Salutation, is a Defective, according to what is here delivered of it: but *avto* to covet or deſire, hath more Tenſes.

Imperat. Sing. *Cedo.* Plur. *cedite.* *Cedo.*

¶ *Cedo* is uſed for *dic* or *porrige. Nomen mulieris ceda quod ſit.* Ter. Heaut. 4. 2. *Puerum mihi cedo.* Ter. Hec. 4. 4. For *cedite* anciently was ſaid *cette. Cette manus veſtras. Enn.* in *Medea.*

Potent. Preterperf. *Faxim, faxis, faxit.* Plur. *Faxint.* Fut. *Faxo, faxis, faxit.* Plur. *faxint.* *Faxim.*

¶ *Faxim* is made of *facerim*, for *fecerim*, ſaith *Voſſius*, and ſo *faxo* of *facero*, for *fecero*: for the Ancients did often retain the Vowel of the Preſent Tenſe in the Preterperf. Tenſe. Hence *canuere* in *Saluſt.* for *cecinere.* Of the ſame nature and formation is *axim, adaxim*, and *axo.* There is read alſo *faximus* and *faxitis* in the Plural Number: and *faxem* for *feciſſem*, ſaith *Voſſ.* (*de Analog.* l. 3. c. 41.) and *faxere* for *facturum eſſe*, ſaith Mr. *Shirly. Via ad Lat. Ling.* p. 99.

Potent. Preterimperf. Sing. *Forem, fores, foret.* Plur. *forent.* Infinit. *fore.* *Forem.*

¶ *Forem* is made of *fuerem*, and *fore* of *fuere* of the old Verb *fuo.* There is alſo read in *Virgil. afforet*; in *Terence, conſore. Voſſius* in *Etymolog. Lat.* p. 133. names *deforem.*

Indicat. Pref. *Quæſo.* Plur. *Quæſumus.* *Quæſo.*

¶ In *Lucret.* there is read *quæſit*; in *Plaut. quæſere*; in *Apuleius,*

leius, quæſens; in *Ennius, quæſendum.* See *Voſſ. de Analog.* l. 3. c. 41.

Inſit. Indicat. Preſ. *Inſit.*

¶ *Inſit* comes of *inſio* uſed by *Varro*, as *Priſcian* teſtifies *l.* 8. It ſignifies the ſame that *Incipit. Inſit ibi poſtulare. Plaut. Aulul.* 2. 4. Hither may be referred *deſit* for *deeſt, deſiunt*; *deſiet, deſiat, deſieri.* Alſo *conſit* and *conſieri. Aliis quia deſit quod amant, ægrè eſt.* Ter. *Quæ creſcente lunâ gliſcunt, deficiente contrà luna deſiunt.* Gell. *Verùm quid ego dicam? hoc conſit, quod volo.* Ter. *Nunc quâ ratione quod inſtat Conſieri poſſit, paucis, adverte, docebo.* Virg.

Inquam. Indicat. Preſ. *Inquam, inquis, inquit.* Plur. *Inquimus, inquitis, inquiunt.* Preterimperf. *inquiebat, inquiebant.* Preterperf. *inquiſti.* Futur. *inquies, inquiet.* Imperat. *inque, inquito.*

¶ Grammarians name more; but till what they name be confirmed by good authority, it may do well to forbear them. Theſe here named, may be confirmed by authority. *Inquam, inquis, inquit, inquiunt, inquiebat, inquiebant, inquiſti, inquies* and *inquiet* are read in *Cicero*; *inquimus* in *Horace*; *inque* in *Terence*; *inquito* in *Plautus.* See *Voſſ. Etymolog. Lat.* p. 133. and *de Analog.* l. 3. c. 40. *Inquibat* is in *Cicero*'s *Topicks*, unleſs it be a miſprint.

Vale. Indicat. Fut. *Valebis.* Imperat. *vale, valete*; *valete, valetote.* Infinit. *valere.*

¶ *Valeo*, to be ſtrong or able, is a perfect Verb; but *valebis*, being a form of *valediction*, or bidding adieu or farewel, is a Verb defective.

Apage. Imperat. *Apage.* Plur. *apagite.*

¶ *Voſſius* deriveth *apage* and *apagite* from the Greek ἄπαγε, and ἀπάγεσθε of ἀπάγω to drive away. *Apage* is read in *Plaut. apagite* in *Cic.*

Ovat. Indicat. Preſ. *Ovat.* Particip. *Ovans.*

¶ Mr. *Shirly* adds *Ovarent* and *ovandi*; his authority he names not. From a Supine of this Verb *Voſſius* derives the Verbals *Ovatus* and *Ovatio.*

Explicit. Indicat. Preſ. *Explicit.* Plur. *explicimt. Shirly Gram. Lat.* p. 39.

¶ *Explicit* ſignifies the ſame with *definit.*

Scio. *Scio* in the Imperative Mood hath not *ſci.*

Soleo. *Soleo* in the Future Tenſe hath not *ſolebo.*

Furo. *Furo* hath not in the Imperative Mood *fure.*

Daris. *Faris.* Neither *der* nor *for* are read in the Indicative Mood; nor *der* and *fer* in the Subjunctive Mood; yet *daris* and *faris*, &c. are uſed. *Diomedes* owns *effor. Fans* is in *Plaut. Perſ.* 2. 1. *Tu meum ingenium ſans non didiciſti, atque infans.*

Theſe three *odi, cœpi, memini* want the Tenſes formed of the Preſent tenſe: but have thoſe that come of the Preterperfect tenſe,

tense, as *odi, odisti, odit*, &c. *oderam, oderim, odissem, odero, odisse.* *Odi.*
Part. *osurus.* So *cœpi, cœperim, cœpissem, cœpero, cœpisse.* Sup. *cœptum, cœptu.* Particip. *cœpturus.* So *Memini, meminetam, meminerim, meminissem, meminero, meminisse.* *Cœpi.* *Memini.*

¶ These three Verbs in the Preterperfect tense have the signification of the Present tense; and in the Future-tense of the Potential Mood have the signification of the Future tense of the Indicative Mood, *Odi* hath also *osus sum*, and *cœpi, cœptus sum* in the Preterperfect tense. And *memini* hath *memento* and *mementote* in the Imperative Mood. Anciently there was *odio*, whence were formed *Odivi, odivit, odite, odiet, odient, odibunt, odientes, oditur, odiaris.* So also *cœpio*, whence *cœpiam, cœpiat, cœpiret*, which are sometimes read, but are now disused. It is ordinary to add to these *Novi*, because this like the rest hath in the Preterperfect tense the signification of the Present tense. But the Verb is a perfect Verb, formed of *nosco.* See *Voss. de Analog.* l. 3. c. 39. *Novi.*

And thus far of Forming of Verbs.

CHAP. IV.

Of Translating English into Latine.

BY that time the Scholar is made perfect in Forming Nouns and Verbs, it will be time to put him not only to learn an Author, but also to make *Latine*; supposing he hath in the mean time attained to some competency of knowledge of the Rules for the Genders of Nouns and Preterperfect Tenses, and Supines of Verbs, and for the *Agreement* and *Government* of Words, in English at least, and however so far, that he knows where to find, by turning thereto, such Rules as will be needful for him to consult withal for the true making of his Latine. And supposing also that he knows the several *Characters*, Marks, or Notes of *Points, Pauses*, or *Stops* used in speaking or writing, and something also of the *meaning*, use, and force of them. And supposing also that he hath learned some *Nomenclature* of *Words*: or is made able by his Dictionary to find out *Latine* for his *English*.

And because a taste at least of this knowledge of *Points* and *Pointing* is highly necessary towards the Scholars both right reading and understanding, and also to his right construing and translating, therefore I will here add somewhat of it.

Of Points.

The Points are five: a *Period*, a *Colon*, a *Comma*, a Note of *Interrogation*, and a Note of *Admiration*.

A *Period* is a ſingle prick ſet at the foot of a word, thus (.)

A *Colon* is two pricks ſet one over the other after a word, thus (:)

A *Comma* is a ſmall ſemicircle ſet after a word at the foot of it, thus (,)

A Note of *Interrogation* is a prick ſet after a word with a ſemicircle above it, thus (?)

A Note of *Admiration* is a prick ſet after a word with a ſhort ſtraight line over it, thus (!)

To theſe by ſome are added a *Semi-Period*, a *Semi-Colon*, and a *Semi-Comma*.

A *Semi-Period* is marked thus (.) a *Semi-Colon* thus (;) and a *Semi-Comma* thus (,)

And with theſe are uſually taught a *Parentheſis* marked with two *Semicircles*, thus (); and a *Paratheſis* marked with two *Semiquadrats*, thus []

Of Pointing.

The *Rules of Pointing* are either *General* or *Particular*.

The *General Rule*, which concerns all the Points, is this, *That ſo many finite Verbs as are either expreſſed or implied in any ſentence, ſo many Points do belong to that ſentence, if the words of it be placed in the natural order.*

The *Particular Rules*, which concern the ſeveral Points, are theſe.

1. *Of a Period.*

A *Period* is ſet, after a ſentence containing a full and abſolute ſenſe, is compleatly ended; whether it be a ſimple or compounded ſentence; conſiſting of one, or more Propoſitions: as

Sera nunquam eſt ad bonos mores via. Sen.

Nihil enim honeſtum eſſe poteſt, quod juſtitiâ vacat. Cic.

Poſt amicitiam credendum eſt, ante amicitiam judicandum. Sen.

Non qui parum habet, ſed qui plus cupit, pauper eſt. Sen.

Sæpe utile eſt non ſcire, quid futurum ſit: miſerum eſt enim, nihil proficientem angi. Cic.

N. Here it may be very uſeful to inſtruct the Learner, as far as he is capable of it, in the nature of *Enunciations* and *Propoſitions*, both *ſimple* and ſingle, and alſo *complex*, and compounded, that he may the better know when his ſenſe is compleatly ended, and how the *Pointing* of his *Period*, in all the parts of it, is to be ordered.

2. *Of a Colon.*

A *Colon* is ſet between the dividing members of a Period, or Sentence compounded of ſundry Propoſitions.

Such as are,

(1) An *Enunciation* and its *Reaſon*: as,

Vigilandum eſt ſemper; multæ inſidiæ ſunt bonis. Cic.

Ætati

Ætate fruere : mobili curſu fugit. Sen.

(2) A *Propoſition* and its *Reddition* in a Similitude : as,

Ut major eſt vis animi, quàm corporis : ſic ſunt graviora ea, quæ concipiuntur animo, quàm illa, quæ corpore. Cic.

(3) A *Conceſſive* and its *Adverſative* Conjunction : as,

Quanquam ipſa conſolatio literarum tuarum mihi gratiſſima eſt : tamen illum fructum ex literis tuis cepi, &c. Cic. Fam. l. 5.

Itaque etſi domum bene potus, ſeròque redieram : tamen id caput, ubi hæc controverſia eſt, notavi, &c. Cic. Fam. 7. 22.

Eſt invidioſa lex, ſicut dixi : Veruntamen habet excuſationem : non enim videtur hominis lex eſſe, ſed temporis. Cic. 2. de Leg. Agr.

N. If the ſenſe of the firſt member be very incompleat ; or the words of either member tranſpoſed with the words of the other ; and the whole Period be very ſhort, then ſet a *Comma* between them.

(4) A *Totum* and its *Parts* in a Diſtinction : as,

Cujus partes duæ ſunt : Juſtitia, in quâ virtutis ſplendor eſt maximus, & huic conjuncta Beneficentia, &c. Cic. 1. Off. c. 8.

Animum in duas partes dividunt : alteram rationis particìpem faciunt, alteram expertem. Cic. 4. Tuſc.

(5) Diſtinguiſhing *Branches* in a *Partition* : as,

Primùm mihi videtur de genere belli : deinde de magnitudine : tum de imperatore deligendo eſſe dicendum. Cic. pro Leg. Manil.

Primùm docent deos eſſe : deinde quales ſint : tunc mundum ab iis adminiſtrari : poſtremò, conſulere eos rebus humanis. Cic. de Nat. Deor.

(6) *Clauſe* and *Clauſe* in a Tranſition : as,

Cauſa, quæ ſit, videtis : nunc quid agendum ſit, conſiderate. Cic. pro Leg. Manil.

3. *Of a Comma.*

(1) A *Comma* is ſet betwixt the parts of a compounded Propoſition, whether it be *Conditional*, *Caſual*, or *Relative* : and whether it be *Copulative*, *Diſcretive*, or *Disjunctive*.

1. Conditional : as,

Si dives eſt, bonus eſt.
Non ſi bonus eſt, dives eſt.

2. Caſual : as,

Quia ſurſum tendit, leve eſt.
Remiſſa ſunt ei peccata, quia dilexit multùm.

3. Relative : as,

Qui non eſt hodie, cras minùs aptus erit.
Quantum quiſque ſuâ nummorum ſervat in arcâ,
Tantum habet & fidei. Juv.
Quantò perditior quiſque eſt, tantò acriùs urget. Hor.
Quot vulnera, tot ora.
Qualis Princeps, talis populus.

Unde

Unde oriuntur omnia, eò redeunt.

Non ubi quisque erit, ejus loci jus tenebit. Cic.

Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos. Ovid.

Quoties dicimus, toties de nobis judicatur. Cic.

Antequam incipias, consulto: postquam consulueris, maturè factò opus est. Sall.

4. Copulative: as,

Et homo, & brutum sentit.

Neque metuam quicquam, & cavebo omnia.

Neque bonis, neque malis invidendum est.

Non & amictus, & adulator est.

Hic & pauper, & pius, & doctus est.

5. Discretive: as,

Non qui patitur, sed qui facit injuriam, miser est.

Felicitas non in habitu, sed in actu virtutis consistit.

Quanquam robustus est, tamen ignavus est.

Quanquam planta non sentit, tamen vivit.

Non quanquam avarus est, tamen vir bonus est.

6. Disjunctive: as,

Aut dies est, aut nox.

Non aut homo est, aut animal non est.

Aut album, aut nigrum, aut medii coloris est, aut omnino coloratum non est.

Non aut hoc, aut illud, aut istud est.

(2) A *Comma* is set betwixt the parts of a simple Proposition, where the order of the parts is inverted: or the words ungrammatically placed: as,

Animal est, omnis homo.

Non est delineata res, vivere. Sen. ep. 107.

(3) A *Comma* is set before a Substantive with his dependents added to another Substantive by Apposition: as,

Nunc autem studetis me interficere, hominem qui veritatem vobis locutus sum.

Deliciæ verò tuæ, noster Æsopus, ejusmodi fuit, ut— Cic.

Provocare ausus Albanos, gravem & diu principem populum. Flor.

(4) A *Comma* is set before an Exegetical Expression added to something going before for explication, restriction, or amplification; especially if brought in by a Participle, or other Adjective: as,

Rheginos credo, quod Scenicis artibus largiri solebant, id huic summâ ingenii prædito gloriâ, noluisse? Cic.

Sit igitur, Judices, sanctum apud vos, humanissimos homines, hoc Poetæ nomen, quod nullâ unquam barbariâ violavit. Cic.

Themistoclem illum, summum Athenis virum, dixisse aiunt— Cic.

(5) A *Comma* is set before and after an *Icon* or Assimilation, inserted within a sentence for illustration: as,

Eloquen-

Eloquentiæ magiſter, niſi, tanquam piſcator, eam impoſuerit hamis eſcam, quam ſcierit appetituros eſſe piſciculos, ſine ſpe prædæ moratur in ſcopulo. Petron.

(6) A *Comma* is ſet before and after a word or clauſe, inſerted within another ſentence for elegancy of compoſition: as,

Pacem, etiam qui vincere poſſunt, volunt. Liv.

Difficile eſt dictu, Quirites, quanto in odio ſimus apud exteras nationes, propter eorum, quos ad eas hoc anno cum imperio miſimus, injurias, ac libidines. Cic.

(7) A *Comma* is ſet after a *Vocative Caſe* in the beginning of a clauſe, and both before and after it in the middle of a clauſe: as,

Sexte noſter, bonâ veniâ dic, quoniam, &c. Cic. pro Dom.

Marce Tulli, quid agis? Cic. 1. Cat.

O noſter Demea, ad omnia, alia ætate ſapimus rectiùs. Ter.

Quouſque tandem abutere, Catilina, patientiâ noſtrâ? Cic.

Omnia, mi Lucili, aliena ſunt: tempus tantùm noſtrum eſt. Sen. ep. 1.

N. The Point after a Vocative Caſe in the end of a clauſe is ſuch as the nature of the clauſe requireth: whether Period, Colon, Comma, Interrogation, or Admiration: as,

Auſculta paucis, nîſi moleſtum eſt, Demea. Ter. Ad.

Ità fac, mi Lucili: vindica te tibi. Sen. ep. 1.

Dis quidem eſſes, Demea, ac tuam rem conſtabiliſſes. Ter. Ad.

Quid fit, Cteſipho? Ter.

O mi Æſchine! O mi germane! Ter. Ad.

(8) A *Comma* is ſet before or after an *Adjective* ſtanding between two Subſtantives, and capable of being conſtrued with either, to declare to which it belongs: as,

Summâ quidem auctoritate Philoſophi, ſeverè ſanè atque honeſtè, hæc tria genera confuſa, cogitatione diſtinguunt. Cic. 2. Off.

Where the *Comma* is ſet after *confuſa*, to prevent its being thought to agree with *cogitatione*.

(9) A *Comma* is ſet before a *Relative* in a latter clauſe of a ſentence, or before the word beginning that clauſe in which the Relative is: as,

Cauſa mea eſt melior, qui non contraria fovi
Arma. Ovid.

Lego Virgilium, præ quo cæteri Poetæ ſordent.

(10) A *Comma* is ſet betwixt *quàm* in one clauſe, and his correſponding Particle, *tam, æquè, non minùs, antè, priùs, poſt*, &c. in another: as,

Tam te diligo, quàm meipſum. Ter.

Nihil æquè facere ad viperæ morſum, quàm taxi arboris ſuccum. Suet.

Hæc res non minùs me malè habet, quàm te. Ter.

Si quàm audax eſt ad conandum, tam eſſet obſcurus in agendo. Cic.

Quæ

Quæ cauſa antè mortua eſt, quàm tu natus eſſes. Cic.
Multò priùs ſcivi, quàm tu, illum amicum habere. Ter.
Annibal tertio pòſt die, quàm venit, copias in aciem eduxit. Liv.
Poſtridie intellexi, quàm à vobis diſceſſi. Cic.
Vicinum citiùs adjuveris in fructibus percipiendis, quàm aut fratrem, aut familiarem. Cic.

(11) A *Comma* is ſet before an *Adverb* having the force of a *Connexive Conjunction:* and generally when any *connexive Particle* is expreſſed or implied: as,

Non arbor erat relicta, non gubernaculum, non funis, aut remus. Petron.
Curris, ſtupes, ſatagis, tanquam mus in matellâ. Petron.
Rumorem, fabulam fictam, falſam perhorreſcimus. Cic.
Cujus omnis actio, ratio, cogitatio, totus denique tribunatus, nihil aliud fuit, niſi conſtans, perpetua, fortis, invicta defenſio ſalutis meæ. Cic.

(12) A *Comma* is ſet before an *Infinitive Verb* with his *Accuſative Caſe*, which may be reſolved into a Finite Verb and a Nominative Caſe: as,

Non poſſum dicere, me nihil perdere. Sen. ep. 1.
Sed oſtendere, me ægrè pati, illi nolui. Ter. Ad. 1. 2.

(13) A *Comma* is ſet after an *Interjection* with his dependents, if he have any; unleſs it be ſuch an Interjection as properly requires another Point, as Interjections of Admiration or Exclamation: as,

Oh, tibi ego ut credam, furciſer? Ter. And. 3. 5.
Hei mihi, cur non habeo ſpatium, ut—— Ter. And. 4. 1.
Heus, proximus ſum egomet mihi. Ter. And. 4. 1.
Hem! ſi, mane. Ib. *Hem, Pamphile, optimè te mihi offers.* Ib. 4. 2.

(14) A *Comma* is ſet after an *Ablative Caſe Abſolute* with its dependents, and before it too, if it be in the middle of a ſentence: as,

Sed expoſitis adoleſcentium officiis, deinceps de beneficentiâ dicendum eſt. Cic. 2. Offic.
Credo pudicitiam, Saturno rege, moratam
In terris. Juv.
Deum, quo auctore cuncta proveniunt, ſine murmuratione comitari. Sen. ep. 107.

Of a Semi-Period.

A *Semi-Period* (.) though it differ not in figure from a *full Period*, yet is diſtinguiſhed from it by this, that when a *Great Letter* follows, it is called *Periodus ſupina*, or abſolutely a *Period:* but when a *Small Letter* follows, it is called *Periodus pendens*, or a *Semi-Period.* And 'twould do well to be ſet, not at the foot, but at the head of the foregoing word.

A *Semi-Period* is ſet betwixt Periods, whereof the latter hath a

near

near dependence on the former for ſenſe of matter, though not for conſtruction of words; the latter beginning with a new principal Verb, as well as the former: as,

Cum rerum naturâ delibera. illa dicet tibi, ſe & diem feciſſe, & noctem. Sen. ep. 3.

Hodiernus dies ſolidus eſt. nemo ex illo quidquam mihi eripuit: totus inter ſtratum lectionémque diviſus eſt. Sen. ep. 83.

The *proper place for a Semi-Period* (might it be ſo far admitted) were betwixt the former and latter part of a Period conſiſting of a *Protaſis* and its *Apodoſis*, or an *Enunciation* and its *Reaſon*: alſo betwixt a *Totum* and his *Parts* in a Diviſion, and betwixt *Clauſe* and *Clauſe* in a Tranſition.

Of a Semi-Colon.

A *Semi-Colon* (;) is ſet where the pauſe ſeems leſſer than that of a *Colon*, and yet greater than that of a *Comma*: as,

Tu quid divitiæ poſſint, conſideras; quid virtus, non item.

The *proper place for a Semi-Colon* ſeems to be between *member* and *member* in a *Diviſion* (if the parts be ſeparated from the *Totum* by a *Semi-Period*) or in a *Subdiviſion* (if the parts be ſeparated from the *Totum* by a *Colon*): alſo between *branch* and *branch* in a *Partition*; and generally betwixt *Oppoſits* in a *Diſtinction*.

Of a Semi-Comma.

A *Semi-Comma* (,) is ſet where a leſs pauſe or diſtinction is needful than that of a Comma.

And *its proper place*, if it may be admitted ſo far, will be: where the Words of a ſimple Propoſition are ungrammatically (or, the parts illogically) placed, (viz. the *Predicate* before the *Subject*); where the words of one clauſe are, for *elegancy of Compoſition*, inſerted within the words of another; where an *Exegetical addition* is made to a foregoing Subſtantive, by the *Appoſition* of another Subſtantive to it, or of an Adjective, or Participle, with its dependents on it; where a *Word* ſo ſtands *between two Clauſes*, as that it may be taken to belong to either; and generally, where there is need of *more pauſes* in pronunciation, than there are diſtinct parts of the conſtruction: as, where the circumſtances of actions [viz. *time, place, manner, means*, &c.] are expreſſed together with them.

This Period of *Cicero*'s, pointed as follows, may, in part, be an exemplification of the foregoing Rules.

Denique, Quirites, quoniam me quatuor omnino genera hominum violârunt. Unum eorum, qui odio reipublicæ, quòd eam, ipſis invitis, conſervâram, mihi inimiciſſimi fuerunt: alterum, qui, per ſimulationem amicitiæ, nefariè prodiderunt: tertium, qui, cùm, propter inertiam ſuam, eadem aſſequi non poſſent, inviderunt laudi, & dignitati meæ: quartum, qui, cùm cuſtodes reipub. eſſe debuerunt, ſalutem meam, ſtatum civitatis, dignitatem ejus imperii, quod erat penès

ipſos, vendidarunt: Sit ulciſcar genera ſingula, quemadmodum à quibuſque ſum provocatus: multos cives, rempub. bene gerendo; perfidos amicos, nihil credendo, atque omnia cavendo; invidos, virtuti, & gloriæ ſerviendo; mercatores provinciarum, revocando domum, atque ab iis provinciarum rationem repetendo. Cic. ad Quirit. poſt redit.

Of a Note of Interrogation.

A Note of *Interrogation* (?) is ſet at the end of a *queſtion*: as,

Quæ nota domeſticæ turpitudinis non inuſta vitæ tuæ eſt?

This Note is ſometimes continued through *many* clauſes of a Period: as,

Quouſque tandem abutêre, Catilina, patientiâ noſtrâ? quamdiu nos etiam furor iſte tuus eludet? quem ad finem ſeſe effrænata jactabit audacia?

Sometimes it is *omitted*, though the ſpeech be interrogative; namely, when the ſentence is lengthned ſo far, that the Interrogative force, wherewith it began, is by little and little waſted and loſt: as,

An tu putas eſſe bonos viros, qui amicitas utilitate colunt; nihil ad humanitatem, nihil ad honeſtum referunt; nec libenter ea curant, quæ ego niſi curarem præter cæteros, prorſus me thâ benevolentiâ, in quâ magnam felicitatis meæ partem ſoleo ponere, indignum putarem.

Of a Note of Admiration.

A Note of *Admiration* (!) is ſet after words of *Admiring, Exclaiming*, or *Deploring*: as,

O vir fortis atque amicus! Ter. Phor.

Prob Deûm atque hominum fidem! Cic. 5. Verr.

Ah virgo infœlix! Virg. 6. Eclog.

Vah inconſtantiam! Vah mea Antipho!

Vah homo impudens!

Heu ſtirpem inviſam! Virg. 2. Æn.

Heu pietas! heu priſca fides! Virg. 6. Æn.

Of a Parentheſis.

A *Parentheſis* ( ) incloſes within one ſentence another ſentence which is no part of it: as,

Deus ad homines venit, imò (quod propius eſt) in homines venit. Sen. ep. 73.

Of a Parathesis.

A *Parathesis* [ ] incloſes Synonymous words and Æquipollent Phraſes, or Exegetical Deſcriptions added to the former, *&c.* as,

Aliud nihil, quam [niſi] flere potui.

Non dubium eſt mihi, quin [nihil vereor, ne non] & auctior indies, & illuſtrior futura ſit.

Pertuſum quicquid in dolium infunditur [i. e. *quicquid ingrato feceris*] *perit.*

Theſe

These few plain Rules and easie Directions may be sufficient for a young Learner. For fulness and accurateness of skill in *Pointing*, recourse must be had to *Grammarians* and *Rhetoricians* that have written of it: though I know none that has written so fully and accurately, as to be exactly followed by all others; most differing both from others, and from themselves herein; and in these Rules I prescribe to none. He that to me seems to have gone the furthest, and come the neareſt to the setting of a Standard for others, is that ingenious Grammarian, Dr. *Lewis*, in his *Engl. Gram.* p. 1, 2, 3. and *Plain and short Rules* for *Pointing Periods*, p. 1, 2, 3.

It is the usual (and indeed the best) way to begin with Translating. To render this work easie and successful, it will be good to contrive Englishes, wherein the first things, and those that are most easie, yet necessary to make way for what is to follow, shall be proposed. Such will be little Sentences containing the Agreement of the Verb personal with his Nominative Case; Adjective with his Substantive; or Substantive with his Substantive belonging to the same thing. Or the Government of an Accusative Case by a Verb; or a Genitive Case by a former Substantive, and the like. After some time spent in these kind of Englishes, more difficult may be proceeded unto, namely, such as contain in them the Agreement and Government of the Relative, *&c.* or else to put his Scholars to the Translating of some English Book, proper for that purpose: such as Mr. *Wase*'s Essay of a Practical Grammar, Dr. *Lewis*'s Vestibulum, Wits Commonwealth, Moral Philosophy, or a Treatise of mine own, composed for this very purpose, and intituled, *English Examples*, framed to the Rules of the *Latine Syntaxis*; unless he please to translate for them himself, *Tully*'s Sentences, or some Epistle of *Seneca*, or Oration of *Cicero*, &c.

Let the Teacher in the first place teach his Scholar to know, and then cause him to put the English words out of the Artificial into the Natural order, and so read them, not suffering him, (as it is the use with some) just to fall to translating them, as he finds them lying in the English Book. The natural order being found, the work is half done: all will then run of it self almost.

The Scholar will be taught the Natural Order of the English by Precept and by Practice.

For *Precept*, the Teacher may be pleased to go according to his own judgment, and his Scholar's need. In the mean time he may instil into his Learner these General Rules.

General Rules touching the Natural Order of Words.

The Perſon ſpoken to, comes before the words ſpoken to him.

Words of Connexion come before the words of Clauſes connexed by them.

Words governing others, go before thoſe that are governed of them.

Words agreeing with others, follow thoſe that they agree with.

Words declaring others, follow thoſe that they declare.

Words depending on others, follow thoſe that they depend upon.

Theſe general Rules have ſome Exceptions, as moſt general Rules have. For the *Relative*, if it be not the Nominative Caſe, comes before the word that governs it, except that word be a Prepoſition; ſo doth the *Interrogative* and *Indefinite*, &c. And in Engliſh the *Adjective* oft comes before the *Subſtantive*, that it agrees with. But it is a ſure way ever to make the Subſtantive before the Adjective. But if the Teacher ſhall think theſe Rules too *General*, he may be pleaſed to give his Scholar theſe following, which are more *Particular*.

Particular Rules for the Natural or Grammatical Order of Words.

Rule 1. In the firſt place ſtand Words of *Excitation* or ſtirring up to attention.

Such as are,

(1) *Interjections* and *Adverbs* of Exhorting, Wiſhing, Calling, Shewing, Asking: as, *O, oh, heu, age, agite, ut, utinam, heus, eho, ehodum, en, ecce, an, quomodo*, &c.

And with theſe go their Caſes depending on them.

(2) *Vocative Caſes* of Nouns or Pronouns.

If there be none of theſe in the ſentence, then in the firſt place ſtand *Adverbs* of *Forbidding*, Likeneſs, or Relation: or *Conjunctions* Cauſals or Rationals: as, *Ne, nequaquam; quemadmodum, ſicut; cum, quando, donec; quandoquidem, quare*, &c.

Rule 2. In the ſecond place (if any of the former ſort of words go before, elſe in the firſt place) ſtands that *Subſtantive*, which is the *Nominative Caſe* to the principal Verb Perſonal, or that which ſtands inſtead of the Nominative Caſe to it.

And together with the *Subſtantive* goes the *Adjective* that agrees with it.

And if either the Subſtantive or Adjective do govern a caſual word, then together with the Subſtantive or Adjective goes the

Caſual

Caſual word governed of it: as alſo any other word depending on it.

Rule 3. Next to the Nominative Caſe and his Dependents ſtands the *Verb Perſonal* that agrees with it.

But if the Verb be an *Impersonal*, or a Verb put Impersonally, then that, not having any Nominative Caſe before it, begins the ſentence: as, *Tædet me vitæ. Hæc olim meminiſſe juvabit.* Virg.

And as the *Nominative* Caſe ſtands before the Verb of a *Finite* Mood, ſo the *Accuſative* ſtands before a Verb of the *Infinitive* Mood: as, *Te rediiſſe incolumem gaudeo.*

Rule 4. Next to the Verb ſtands the *Adverb* (if there be any) of Place, Time, Quantity, Quality, or the like.

But if there be no Adverb coming with the Verb for the explaining of it, then next to the Verb ſtands the *Caſual word* governed of the Verb; or the Infinitive Mood, if there be one, with his dependents.

And if the Verb have ſeveral Caſual words after it, which are governed of it, then the Dative goes before the Accuſative, and the Accuſative before the Genitive and Ablative: as,

Dono tibi hoc munus. Dono te hoc munere. Admoneto illum priſtinæ fortunæ. Lupum auribus teneo.

Rule 5. After the Verb with his dependents follows the *Preposition*, together with the Caſual word governed of him, and his dependents: as, *Accipit in Teucros animum, mentémque benignam.* Virg. *Initia in poteſtate noſtrâ ſunt, de eventu fortunæ judicat.* Sen.

Rule 6. After the Verb alſo with his dependents follows the *Ablative Caſe Abſolute*, and what depends on it: as, *Imperante Auguſto natus eſt Chriſtus.*

Though the Ablative Caſe Abſolute, as virtually containing a Verb in it's clauſe, may be ſet before the Verb too, as it may ſtand with moſt conveniency.

Note 1. *Interrogatives* and *Relatives* governed of a Verb *come before the Verb* that governs them.

Alſo they come before any other word that governs them, except a Prepoſition.

And together *with the Interrogative* and Relative comes the *Caſual word*, if it be expreſſed, that they agree with.

Alſo, if they be not governed of the Verb, then both they and the word that they are governed of, moſtly come before the Verb: as,

Cujus numen adoro. Quibus rebus adductus feciſti?

Note 2. If any thing be *wanting*, neceſſary to compleat the conſtruction, it is to be ſupplied: as, *Ventum erat ad Veſtæ*, i. e. *templum.*

Note 3. *Figurative Conſtruction* is to be reſolved into Proper: as, *Velle ſuum*, i. e. *Voluntas ſua. Id genus alia*, i. e. *ejus generis.*

If the Teacher think not theſe Rules to be enow, or not plain enough, he may be pleaſed to frame Rules of himſelf more plain and full: or elſe conſult *Rhenius De Naturali Ordine Conſtructionis* in his *Gram. Lat.* p. 540. and *Voſſ. De Ordine Grammatico* in his *Gram. Lat.* p. 107. Or Mr. *Brinſly* in his *Ludus Literarius*, and *Poſing of the Accidence*; or Mr. *Lewis* in his *Grammar*, and *Rules of Pointing*, &c.

For *Practice*, which ſuperadded to the knowledge of theſe few general Rules, will in a manner do the whole work, I adviſe, that the Teacher do contrive, or chuſe out ſome ſentences, wherein the words are Artificially placed, and cauſe his Scholars (himſelf looking on) to reduce thoſe into the Natural Order. For inſtance; Suppoſe the Scholars had this Engliſh to tranſlate into Latine, *Of this glory, O* Cajus Cæſar, *which thou haſt lately gotten, thou haſt no partner*; the way to do it right and ſurely, were to caſt it into the Natural Order, *O* Cajus Cæſar, *thou haſt no partner of this glory, which thou haſt gotten lately.* To reduce Verſes into Proſe after this manner, will be an uſeful practice to this end. And the labour will not be great. Three or four tryals to an ordinary capacity will be ſufficient.

When the Natural Order of the words of the Engliſh is found, then let the Scholar ſeek out Latine words for the Engliſh, and conſider how to put them into good Syntax. Which when he hath a while ſtudied upon, let him come before the Teacher, and do it *vivâ voce*, as well as he can, the Teacher rectifying him where he is amiſs, and helping him on with that, which he cannot do of himſelf. And ſtill as the Learner goes on from word to word, let the Teacher require a reaſon for his doing that word next: and be often asking, *what* is next to be done, and *why*: and when done, ask *why* it is, or ought to be *thus done*; and make the Learner underſtand a Reaſon, and know a Rule for what he doth. And for the eaſe of the one, and help of the other, I ſhall here ſet down ſome directions to be uſed as need ſhall be.

Directions for making plain Latine.

I. Firſt, Read the Sentence carefully over, and mark the Points; and whether the Speech be Poſitive, Negative, Interrogative, Exclamative, or Admirative.

II. Secondly, Obſerve whether there be in it any *Connexive* Particles, which are to be made in the order that they ſtand in; viz. in the beginning of the Sentence. Yet where *enim* is made for *for*, ſome word would be placed before it in the Latine; it not being uſual to begin Sentences with that word, though ſometimes it be done.

III. Thirdly, Obſerve whether there be in the Sentence any *Vocative*

tive Caſe; for next after the Connexive Particles, if there be any, that is to be made; and if there be none, it is to be made firſt.

Fourthly, Seek out the *principal Verb*; that uſually is the firſt Verb. IV.

But if the firſt Verb have coming immediately before it a Relative, as *that*, *who*, *whom*, *which*, &c. or a Conjunction, as *that*, *if*, &c. or, if it be the Infinitive Mood, then ſeek further for another Verb.

1. Note. The Relative *that* may be diſtinguiſhed from *that* the Conjunction, by this, that the *Conjunction* hath ever a Nominative Caſe betwixt it and the following Verb; but the *Relative* hath none, unleſs when it ſelf is not the Nominative Caſe to the Verb. Alſo the Relative *that* may be varied by *who*, *which*, or *whom*: but the Conjunction *that* cannot.

2. Note. Sometimes a Verb of the Infinitive Mood begins a Sentence, and then ſtands inſtead of the Nominative Caſe to the following Verb: as, *To riſe betimes in the morning is a very wholeſom thing*; Diluculo ſurgere ſaluberrimum eſt.

Fifthly, When the principal Verb is found out, then ſeek out the *Nominative Caſe* to it; and, unleſs there be any Adverbs, or Conjunctions, or Vocative Caſe to be ſet down firſt, begin with that. V.

Note. That word is the Nominative Caſe to the Verb, which with good ſenſe anſwers to the queſtion *who* or *what*, made by the Verb. As in this Sentence, *A clear conſcience* which *needeth no excuſe*, *feareth no accuſation*; to know what is the *Nominative Caſe* to the Verb *feareth*, the way is to put the word *what* to the Verb *feareth*, ſaying, *what feareth no accuſation?* to which queſtion, by reading the Sentence over again, it will appear what is to be anſwered, namely, that *A clear conſcience feareth no accuſation*; ſo the word *Conſcience* is the Nominative Caſe to that Verb.

Sixthly, Having found out the Nominative Caſe to the Verb, conſider of a Latine word fit for it, and ſet it down, minding therewithal the *Gender* and the *Number* of it. VI.

Seventhly, Having ſet down the Nominative Caſe, conſider whether any other words come betwixt it and its Verb. VII.

If none come betwixt, then proceed to find out a Latine word proper for the Engliſh Verb: and when you have conſidered what *Mood* and *Tenſe* it ſhould be of, then make it agree with its Nominative Caſe in *Number* and *Perſon*: that is, if the Nominative Caſe (for example) be of the Singular Number and third Perſon, then make your Verb to be of that Number and Perſon; and ſo what Number or Perſon ſoever your Nominative Caſe be, let your Verb be of the ſame Number and Perſon.

Yet, if the Nominative Caſe be a *Collective Noun*, or a *Noun*

of multitude, the Verb may be of the Plural Number, though the Nominative Caſe be but of the Singular; as, *Pars in fruſta ſecant.* Virg. *In me turba ruunt.* Ovid.

If any words come between the Nominative Caſe and the Principal Verb, then make into Latine whatſoever hath dependence on the Nominative Caſe, namely,

1. That *Subſtantive*, if there be any, that, as belonging to the ſame thing, agrees with it: and together with *that*, or rather immediately after that, make all thoſe words, if there be any, which depend on, or are governed of it. As in this Sentence, *Brennus the Captain of the French entring the Temple of* Apollo, *and ſpoiling it, was ſtricken with madneſs, and ſlew himſelf*; after [*Brennus*] the Nominative Caſe to the principal Verb [*was ſtricken*] is ſet down, muſt be made into Latine the Subſtantive [*Captain*] agreeing in Caſe with [*Brennus*] and next to that the word [*French*] of the Genitive Caſe, governed of the foregoing word [*Captain.*]

2. That *Adjective* whether Noun, Pronoun, or Participle, that agrees with it, if there be one. As in this Sentence; *A clear conſcience, which needeth no excuſe, feareth no accuſation*; the word [*Conſcience*] which is the Nominative Caſe to the Verb [*feareth*] being made into Latine, and ſet down, the next word to be made is the Adjective [*clear*] which agreeth with that Nominative Caſe.

Note. What is the Subſtantive to any Adjective, may be known, by adding the word [*who*] or [*what*] to the Adjective: for the word anſwering to the queſtion ſo made by the Adjective, will be the Subſtantive to it. As in the foregoing Sentence; by adding [*what*] to the Adjective [*clear*], and ſaying by way of queſtion [*A clear what feareth no accuſation?*] it will, by reading the Sentence over again, be found, that the word [*Conſcience*] is the Subſtantive to the Adjective [*clear.*]

Having found what is the Subſtantive to the Adjective, conſider what *Gender* and *Number*, as well as what *Caſe* it is, and put the Adjective into the ſame *Gender*, *Number*, and *Caſe*, that the Subſtantive is of. And this is to be obſerved in all parts of a Sentence, and not only in the beginning of it.

After the Adjective is made to agree with his Subſtantive, then conſider whether there do any words come betwixt it and the Principal Verb, which depend on it, or are governed of it, and if there do come any, then next after it make them. As in this Sentence, *Mordorus ſpoiling Circes Temple, was ſtricken mad with all his Souldiers*; after that the Participle [*ſpoiling*] which agreeth with the Subſtantive [*Mordorus*], is made, then muſt be made the word [*Temple*] governed of [*ſpoiling*]; and the word [*Circes*] which is the Genitive Caſe governed of [*Temple*] the former of the two Subſtantives.

Note,

Note. When two Subſtantives come together, if the former end in [*s*] then 'tis very like that the former is the Genitive Caſe governed of the latter. And whether it be ſo or no, may be known, by putting away [*s*] from the end of the word, and ſetting [*of*] before it, and reading before both, the Subſtantive that follows it. Thus, if inſtead of [*Circes Temple*] it be read [*the Temple of Circe*] it is viſible, that [*Circe*] is the Genitive Caſe governed of [*Temple*] and that [*Circes*] is put for [*of Circe.*]

3. That Subſtantive (if there be any) that is governed of the foregoing Subſtantive in the Genitive or Ablative Caſe. As in this Sentence, *A man of no honeſty is worthy of no truſt*; after the Nominative Caſe [*A man*] is made into Latine, the words [*of no honeſty*] are next to be made into Latine; whereof the firſt [*of*] is but a ſign of the Caſe, and ſo is included in the Latine of the word [*honeſty*]; the ſecond word [*no*] is an Adjective agreeing with the following Subſtantive [*honeſty*], and therefore not to be made into Latine, till the word [*honeſty*], wherewith it agrees, be firſt made (for Subſtantives are always to be made into Latine before their Adjectives, unleſs in *Interrogative* or *Indefinite* ſpeeches) ſo that the third word [*honeſty*] governed of the foregoing Subſtantive [*man*] is to be made into Latine, thus, *Vir probitatis nullius*; or, *Vir probitate nullâ.*

4. That *Relative* (if there be any) which hath reference to the foregoing Nominative Caſe and what depends on it, which is a particular clauſe, branch or member of the Sentence. As in this Sentence, *A clear conſcience, which needeth no excuſe, feareth no accuſation*, the Relative [*which*] with the reſt of that clauſe depending thereon, viz. the words [*needeth no excuſe*] is to be made into Latine, next after the Nominative Caſe to the principal Verb, viz. the word [*conſcience*] and his Adjective [*clear*]: thus, *Conſcientia pura, quæ excuſatione non eget, accuſationem non timet.*

Eighthly, When you have made into Latine, not only the Nominative Caſe, but alſo all that depends both on it, and on the words agreeing with, or governed of it, and is neceſſary, or fit to be made into Latine together with it, or immediately after it, then proceed to make into Latine the *Principal Verb.* And, as was ſaid before, after you have by the Form of the Speech, and by the Signs of the Tenſes, found out, what *Mood* and *Tenſe* the Verb is to be of, then make it accordingly of that *Mood* and *Tenſe*; and alſo of that *Number* and *Perſon*, that the Nominative Caſe, wherewith it agrees, is of. VIII.

The *Number* of the Nominative Caſe is known by its ſignifying one, or more of the things, or perſons that it is the name of.

The *Perſon* of the Nominative Caſe, if it have a Pronoun joyned with it, namely, one of theſe [*Ego, tu, ille*; *nos, vos, illi*] is known

known by the *Perſon* of the Pronoun joyned with it. *Ego* and *Nos*, or *I* and *We*, being of the Firſt Perſon, and ſo that Noun that is joyned with them; *Tu* and *Vos*, or *Thou* and *Ye*, being of the Second Perſon, and ſo that Noun that is joyned with them; *Ille* and *Illi*, or *He* and *They* (and ſo all other Pronouns) being of the Third Perſon, and ſo thoſe Nouns that they are joyned unto.

If the Noun, which is of the Nominative Caſe, have no Pronoun expreſly joyned with it, it is to be conſidered, what Pronoun it may have joyned with it, or put to ſtand for it; and ſuch Perſon, as that Pronoun is, (which generally is of the Third Perſon) ſuch Perſon is the Nominative Caſe to be conceived to be of, and in ſuch Perſon the Verb to agree with it. *Calliopias recenſui*, i. e. *Ego*.

Generally the Nominative Caſe comes before the Verb. Yet ſometimes the Verb, or at leaſt the Sign of the Verb, is ſet before the Nominative Caſe, viz.

1. In *Interrogative* ſpeeches, wherein a queſtion is asked: as, *Loveſt thou the King? Doth he love the King?*

2. In Verbs of the *Imperative Mood*, where ſomething is commanded or permitted: as, *Love thou the King. Do thou love the King. Let us love the King.*

3. In certain Phraſes or Forms of ſpeaking, where theſe Particles [*it*] or [*there*] are joyned with the Verb: as, *It is my book; There came one to me.* Where [*book*] the Nominative Caſe to [*is*] in the former Sentence, and [*one*] the Nominative Caſe to [*came*] in the latter Sentence, is ſet after the Verb, whoſe Nominative Caſe it is, and with which it is to agree.

When [*it*] or [*there*] come with a Verb before a Noun, then mind, whether that Verb be not a *Verb Impersonal* (i. e. one of thoſe Verbs commonly ſo called, and uſually ſet without any Nominative Caſe before them), for [*it*] and [*there*] are Signs of an Impersonal Verb; and if it be, then the word that ſeems to be the Nom. muſt be ſuch Caſe as the Verb Impersonal doth govern: as, *There muſt be ſome body*; Oportet eſſe aliquem.

If the Nominative Caſe come after the Verb, or after the Sign of the Verb, then in writing down or reading *(vivâ voce)* the Engliſh into Latine, write or read the words in the order they ſtand in, viz. Firſt the Verb, then the Nominative Caſe: as, *Loveſt thou the King? Amas tu Regem? Do thou love the King. Ama tu Regem. It is my book, Eſt liber meus. There came one to me, Venit ad me quidam.*

Yet this order is not always neceſſarily to be obſerved, but may ſometimes be altered: as, *Tune amas Regem?* or, *Tu amas Regem? Liber meus eſt. Quidam ad me venit*, may well enough be ſaid.

IX. Ninthly, When the Principal Verb is made, then conſider what

what word or words follow it, in order to the making of them into Latine.

1. If an *Adjective* come after it without any Subſtantive, then moſt likely that Adjective hath reference to that Subſtantive, which is the Nominative Caſe to the Verb: and if ſo, it is to be made alſo in the Nominative Caſe, (what Caſe ſoever the Verb do govern after him): as, *Peter ſleepeth void of care*; *Petrus dormit ſecurus.* And however, it muſt, by putting the word [*who* or *what*, &c.] to the Engliſh Adjective be found out, what Subſtantive the Adjective refers unto, with which when found, the Adjective (as was ſaid before) muſt be made to agree.

2. If a *Subſtantive* come after the principal Verb, (whether with, or without an Adjective) in the ſame clauſe or member of the Period or Sentence, it is then governed of the Verb, and is to be put in ſuch Caſe as the Verb, by virtue of its own ſignification, or uſe in Authors, or Rule in Grammar, requires to have after it, whether Genitive, Dative, Accuſative, or Ablative.

And the ſame thing is to be conſidered and obſerved touching all caſual words coming after all other Verbs, though they be not the Principal in the Sentence.

3. If there come betwixt the Verb and the Subſtantive any caſual Particle or Prepoſition, then it is to be conſidered, what Caſe words are to be of which have thoſe Particles or Prepoſitions coming before them; or what Caſe of a Noun, that Verb having this or that Particle, Sign, or Token after it, is by Grammar Rule to govern: and accordingly the Engliſh is to be made into Latine.

Caſual Particles are, *of*, *to*, *for*, *in*, *into*, *with*, *through*, *from*, *by*, &c.

Grammar Rules guiding to the Caſe of the Verb by the token or ſign going before the Noun, are theſe. *All manner of Verbs put acquiſitively, that is to ſay, with theſe tokens* to *or* for *after them, will have a Dative Caſe. All Verbs require an Ablative Caſe of the Inſtrument with this Sign* with *before it*, &c.

4. If there come more *Subſtantives than one* after the Verb, then it is to be conſidered, whether thoſe Subſtantives do belong to the *ſame*, or to *divers* things.

If they belong *to the ſame* thing, then they are to be put in the ſame Caſe: as, *They drive away the drones a ſluggiſh cattel from the hives*; *Ignavum fucos pecus à præſepibus arcent.* This is as well to be obſerved concerning Subſtantives coming *before the Verb.*

If the Subſtantives belong to the ſame thing, there may be with good ſenſe and Engliſh, ſet between them, theſe words, *who is*, or *which is*, or *which are*: as here, ſluggiſh cattel, *the drones, which are, a ſluggiſh cattel.*

If they belong *to divers things*, then it is to be conſidered what

what reſpect each Subſtantive hath to the Verb (for one and the ſame Verb may, upon divers conſiderations, govern many and divers Caſes, viz. one of the *Thing*; another of the *Perſon*; another of the *Cauſe*, *Manner*, *Adjunct*, *Inſtrument*, &c. (as, *Dedit mihi veſtem pignori*, *te præſente*, *propriâ manu*) and accordingly each Noun is to be put into ſuch Caſe, as the Verb according to that reſpect that the Noun hath to the Verb, doth require of the Noun.

If *any Caſual Particle* come betwixt the Nouns, then they belong to *divers things*, and have different reſpects to the Verb. But if there come *no Caſual* Particle betwixt them, nor any Comma or other Point, then they belong to the ſame thing, and have the ſame reſpect to the Verb, and are to be made by the ſame Caſe, as was ſaid before.

5. If there be any *Subſtantive* following the Verb, that hath no reſpect to the Verb, then it is governed of ſome other Subſtantive, or Adjective, or other Word, coming betwixt the Verb and it; and ſuch Caſe as the Subſtantive, or Adjective, or other Word governs, ſuch Caſe is that Noun to be of.

This is to be obſerved alſo in all parts of the Sentence, as well before, as after the Verb. For in all parts of the Sentence, the following word is governed of that governing word that in the Natural Order of the Words goes next before it, in the ſame clauſe, or part of the Sentence; except it be a *Relative*, or *Interrogative*, &c. which if they be *not* the Nominative Caſe, nor have a Prepoſition coming before them, are ever governed of ſome word coming after them, what Caſe ſoever they be of.

The *Natural Order* of Words is that, according to which, The words are placed ſo, that words depending on others for their Gender, Number, Caſe, Perſon, Mood, *&c.* are ſet after thoſe whereon they depend (as hath been ſhewn) which is not obſerved, but much gone contrary unto in that order of words, which is called Artificial.

6. If any *other Verb* come after the principal Verb, it is to be conſidered, whether there do any caſual word expreſly, or implicitly come betwixt the foregoing and following Verb; and if *no caſual* word come betwixt, then the latter Verb is to be of the Infinitive Mood: as, *I deſire to learn.*

But if *any caſual* word, though but a Pronoun, come between the two Verbs, then though the latter Verb may be *the Infinitive Mood*, (which if it be, then the caſual word foregoing is generally to be the Accuſative Caſe); as, *I bid thee be gone*, or *I bid that thou be gone*, *Jubeo te abire*; *I am glad that you are in health*, *Gaudeo te valere*; yet it may alſo be the *Subjunctive Mood* with *ut*, either expreſſed, or underſtood together with it; (but then the caſual word foregoing muſt be the Nominative Caſe); as, *I*

bid

bid thee be gone, *Jubeo ut tu abeas*; *See that you have a good heart*, *Fac habeas animam fortem*; or with *quòd* (accordingly as the nature of the Verb ſhall require): as, *Quòd tu vales gaudeo*. See *Treat.* of *Engl. Partic.* ch. 75. *r.* 3, 4, 8.

And if the foregoing Verb do govern a Dative Caſe, then the caſual word coming before the latter Verb (if it be made by the Infinitive Mood) may indifferently be put either in the Dative, as governed of the foregoing Verb; or in the Accuſative by reaſon of the Infinitive Mood following. So we may indifferently ſay, *Non licet homini*— or, *Non licet hominem eſſe*, *ut vult*. See *Treat.* of *Engl. Partic. c.* 34. *r.* 21.

7. If there come *more Verbs than one*, after the principal Verb, it is to be conſidered, whether the latter alſo of them, as well as the former, be governed of the principal Verb, or of ſome former that goes before it ſelf, yet comes after the principal Verb.

If it be governed of the *Principal Verb*, then ſome copulative Conjunction expreſly, or implicitly comes betwixt it and the Former Verb: and it is ſo to be made, as the former was, for Mood.

If it be *not governed of the Principal Verb*, then it is governed either of ſome foregoing Verb, or Noun Subſtantive, or Adjective, and is the Infinitive Mood, which may be varied by a Subjunctive Mood with a Conjunction, or Relative. See *Treat.* of *Engl. Partic. c.* 83. *r.* 11. *n.* 7.

Note. Verbs are governed of Subſtantives, and Adjectives, as well as of Verbs: as, *Sed jam tempus eſt ad id, quod inſtituimus, accedere.* Cic. *Itáne es paratus facere omnia?* Ter. But this is a Greciſm.

And this is to be obſerved alſo in all parts of a Sentence or Period, and not only in the body, or latter end of it, or after the principal Verb. *Audax omnia perpeti Gens humana ruit per vetitum neſas.* Hor. *Sed ſi tantus amor caſus cognoſcere noſtros, &c.* Virg.

If there be any *Relatives* in the Sentence, then of every Relative is to be conſidered what it *agrees* with, and (if it be not the Nominative Caſe) what it is *governed* of. X.

The *Agreement* of the Relative is with its Antecedent; that is a Subſtantive going before, which may again, without interruption or diſturbance to the ſenſe, be repeated together with the Relative: as, *Wretched is that man which is in love with money*; or *wretched is that man, which* [*man*] *is in love with money*. Here [*man*] goes before [*which*] and is, or may be repeated together with it.

To know what word is the Antecedent to the Relative, add the word [*who, what, whoſe*, or *whom*, &c.] to the Relative by way of queſtion, and the word that, upon reading the Sentence over

over again, with good ſenſe anſwers to that queſtion, is that Subſtantive Antecedent, with which it agrees. As in this Example, *The man is wiſe which ſpeaketh few things*; to know what is the Antecedent to the Relative [*which*], add the word [*what*] to the word [*which*], and then make a queſtion with thoſe two words, and the following Verb, ſaying, *which what ſpeaketh?* The anſwer whereto will be viſibly this, (upon reading the Sentence over again) *which man ſpeaketh*: ſo that [*man*] is the Antecedent to the Relative [*which*]. For upon every ſuch queſtion the Antecedent will be repeated in the anſwer together with the Relative.

If the word [*that*] be the Relative, turn it into [*who*] or [*which*] &c. and then it will be the eaſilier found out, what is the Antecedent Subſtantive, wherewith it is to agree: as, *Wretched is the man that* [i. e. *which*] *is in love with money.*

Having found what word is the Antecedent to the Relative, make it agree with it in *Gender*, *Number*, and *Perſon*, that is, ſet it down of the ſame Number and Gender, and ſuppoſe it to be of the ſame Perſon with its Antecedent: and let the *Perſon of the Relative* appear by the *Perſon of the Verb*, to which the Relative is the Nominative Caſe, in making the Verb, that hath the Relative for his Nominative Caſe, to be of that Perſon, which that Subſtantive is of, that the Relative refers unto, and agrees with. If the Relative *be not the Nominative Caſe*, then the Perſon of it is not to be heeded. The *Relative* is the Nominative Caſe to the Verb, when there comes no other Nominative Caſe betwixt the Relative and the Verb.

If the Relative be *not the Nominative Caſe* to the following Verb, nor have a Preposition coming with it, nor be together with his Subſtantive put abſolute, then it is governed generally of the Verb that follows it, though ſometimes of other words; as may be ſeen in the Accidence Rules for the Caſe of the Relative.

The *Relative* that is governed of the Verb, muſt be ſuch Caſe, as any other Subſtantive were to be of, if it followed the Verb: becauſe a Subſtantive is ever implied in it, if not expreſſed with it.

If the *Relative be not governed* of the Verb; then, if it be a caſual word, that the Relative is governed of, ſuch Caſe as that word would govern after it, ſuch Caſe muſt the Relative be of, that comes before it. And that caſual word, of which the Relative is governed, muſt be ſuch Caſe as the Verb will govern after him: as, *Cujus numen adoro*; *Cui ſimilem non vidi*; *Quorum optimum ego habeo.* Unleſs there be ſome other word in the Sentence governing that word of which the Relative is governed: as, *Quæ nunc non eſt narrandi locus.* Which word yet is to be ſuch Caſe as the Verb governs after it.

To

To know what word the Relative is governed of (whether it be the Verb, or other word that governs it) the way is, to put a Demonſtrative in the ſtead of it, and then read that clauſe in which it ſtands according to the Natural Order of the words: for then the word that governs the Demonſtrative that is put in inſtead of the Relative, will go before it: and that word that governs the Demonſtrative following it, is the word that governs the Relative going before it. *To know what word the Relative is governed of.*

For Example. In Engliſh, in this Sentence, [*you diſpraiſe him, whom all men commend*] if we take out the Relative [*whom*], and in the ſtead of it put in the Demonſtrative [*him*], and then read that clauſe in which it ſtands, according to the Natural Order of the words, thus, *All men commend him*, it is plain that the Demonſtrative [*him*] is governed of the Verb [*commend*]. And ſo by that it is known, that it is of that Verb, that the Relative [*whom*] is governed. Thus alſo in Latine, in this Sentence, *Vir eſt, cui ſimilem non vidi*, if inſtead of the *Relative* [*cui*], we do put in the *Demonſtrative* [*huic*], and then read that clauſe into which it is put, in the Natural Order of the words, thus—— *Non vidi ſimilem huic*, it is plain that [*huic*] is governed of the Adjective [*ſimilem*] going next before it. And by that it appears, that of that Adjective [*ſimilem*] is the Relative [*cui*] governed.

Yet further to bring Children by eaſie ſteps to the underſtanding of that *great difficulty*, which lyes in putting the *Relative into its right Caſe, Gender, and Number*, wherein moſt uſually they fail, the Teacher may be pleaſed to take this courſe with them. *How to bring Children to underſtand the greateſt Difficulties about the Relative.*

1. Give them Engliſhes wherein the Antecedent Subſtantive, to which the Relative refers, ſhall not only go before the Relative, but be alſo repeated together with it: as, *He had a knife, with which knife he would have ſlain himſelf.*

2. Cauſe them in their daily Tranſlations to encloſe within a *Parathefis*, or two ſquare Brackets [ ] the repeated Subſtantive, wherewith the Relative, as being a perfect Adjective, muſt agree in Caſe, Gender, and Number; after this form, *Ferrum habuit quo* [*ferro*] *ſe occideret.*

3. Cauſe them in the fair writing of their whole weeks Exerciſes to omit the repetition of the Antecedent Subſtantive, yet in the conſtruing thereof (as alſo of their daily Lectures) to expreſs it, as if it were written. As if, for example, having written *Ferrum habuit quo ſe occideret*, they ſhould in conſtruing expreſs *ferro* with *quo*, ſaying, *quo ferro*, with which knife.

4. After they have been practiſed for ſome time in this kind of exerciſe, then give them Engliſhes to tranſlate, wherein the Antecedent Subſtantive ſhall only be expreſſed in the clauſe going before the Relative, and not repeated together, with the Relative in the ſame clauſe where it is: as, *He had a knife, with which*

which he would have ſlain himſelf. Yet in the Tranſlating them, cauſe them ſtill to expreſs the Subſtantive together with the Relative; *Ferrum habuit quo* [*ferro*] *ſe occideret.* This will haunt them, where-ever they meet with a Relative, even of courſe to ſeek out a Subſtantive for it, to expreſs together with it. Of which repetition of the Subſtantive together with the Relative, there be abundant examples in Claſſick Authors. Such is that of *Cicero*'s, *Cùm viderem ex eâ parte homines, cujus partis nos vel principes numerabamur*, pro Quint. And that of *Cæſar*'s, *Legem promulgaverat, quâ lege regnum Jubæ publicaverat*, 2. Bell. Civ. That of *Terentius*, *Habet bonorum exemplum, quo exemplo ſibi licere id facere, quod illi fecerunt, putat*, Heaut. Prol. And that of *Plautus*, *Eſt cauſa, quâ causâ ſimul mecum ire veritus eſt*, Epid. 1. 1. Yet this Repetition, it will be the Maſters diſcretion to order his Scholars to omit, as he ſhall ſee cauſe.

5. Teach them to fill up ſuch Elliptical paſſages as have only that Caſe of the Subſtantive expreſſed, in which the Relative coming together with it, doth agree; that, wherein it might, or ought to differ from it, being omitted. Thus, *Urbem quam ſtatuo, veſtra eſt*, i. e. *Urbs veſtra eſt, quam urbem ſtatuo*, or, *Quam urbem ſtatuo, veſtra urbs eſt.* So, *Eunuchum, quem dediſti nobis, quas turbas dedit? Quas dedit Eunuchus turbas, quem nobis dediſti Eunuchum?* or, *Quas turbas dedit Eunuchus, quem Eunuchum dediſti nobis?* So, *Quis non malarum, quas amor curas habet, hæc inter obliviſcitur?* i. e. *Inter hæc quis non obliviſcitur curarum malarum, quas curas amor habet?* So, *Ad Cæſarem quam miſi epiſtolam, ejus exemplum fugit me tum tibi mittere*, i. e. *Fugit me tum tibi mittere ejus epiſtolæ exemplum, quam ad Cæſarem miſi epiſtolam.* So, *Quos pueros cum Mario miſerunt, epiſtolam mihi attulerunt hoc exemplo*, i. e. *Pueri illi hoc exemplo mihi attulerunt epiſtolam, quos pueros cum Mario miſerunt.*

6. Give them ſuch Engliſhes for Tranſlation, as ſhall have in them *man*, or *thing*, (either expreſſed, or underſtood in the Pronoun put for them,) to be the Subſtantive wherewith the Relative muſt agree. As, *wretched is he* [i. e. *the man*] *that is in love with money, Miſer eſt* [*homo*] *qui* [*homo*] *nummos admiratur. That* [i. e. *that thing*] *is good, which* [i. e. *which thing*] *all* [*things*] *deſire. Bonum illud eſt, quod omnia appetunt.*

Thus by eaſie ſteps will Children be brought, not only to underſtand how to render thoſe Relative Particles *that, who, which, whoſe, whereof, whom*, &c. in right Caſe, Gender, or Number (than the doing of which there is ſcarce any thing more hard to them) but alſo to overcome the greateſt difficulties, that lye in the Regiment of the Relative. And now I return to go on with thoſe Directions for Plain Latine making which yet remain.

If

If the Speech be *Negative*, then obſerve to ſet the Negative Particles before the Verb. XI.

The *Negative Particle* uſually comes betwixt the Verb and the Sign of the Verb, if any Sign of the Verb be expreſſed. As, *I do not perceive, what your intent is.* But if no Sign of the Verb be expreſſed, then it comes after the Verb: as, *I perceive not, what your intent is; Ego, quid agas, nihil intelligo.*

Interrogative Speeches have the ſame Obſervations moſtly that are in *Aſſertive* Speeches. The Interrogative Pronominal Particles being Nominative Caſes to Verbs, and being governed of a Prepoſition before them, or elſe of a Verb, or ſome other word coming after them. As, *Quis enim erat, qui non ſciret? Quid hoc impudentius dici, aut fingi poteſt? Quæ civitati facta eſt injuria? Quantos fluctus excitari concionum videtis? Cui quæſo tandem probaſti? Cui novæ calamitati locus ullus relictus eſſet.* XII.

In *Admirative* or *Exclamative* Speeches, Caſual words are put into divers Caſes, without any Verb expreſſed to govern them in ſuch Caſe by virtue of the Particle of *Admiring*, or *Exclaiming*, accordingly as uſe hath ſubjoyned ſuch and ſuch Caſes unto ſuch and ſuch Particles, or as that Verb governs, which is underſtood together with the Verb. XIII.

Of the Ablative abſolute.

When a Subſtantive comes together with a Participle (expreſſed or underſtood) in the ſame clauſe, and neither is the Nominative Caſe to any following Verb, nor hath before it any other word of which it is governed, then it is put *Abſolute*, and ſo is to be made by the *Ablative Caſe*. As, *The King coming, the enemies fled; Rege veniente hoſtes fugerunt.* XIV.

Note. If any other Nominative Caſe, though but of a Pronoun; come betweẽ the Subſtantive that hath the Participle joyned to it, and the Verb, then that Subſtantive is not the Nominative Caſe to the Verb. But if no Nominative Caſe come betwixt, then it is (not put abſolute, but) the Nominative Caſe to the Verb. As, *The King coming made the enemies flye; Rex veniens hoſtes fugavit.*

In ſpeaking of this Ablative Caſe I follow the received way; not being ignorant what is thought by Learned Perſons of that Conſtruction, namely, that it is governed of ſome Prepoſition underſtood, viz. *à, ab, ſub, cum*, or *in*. See *Treat.* of *Engl. Par.* 20. *r.* 1. *n.* 3.

Well now, when the Learner is able, what by his own ſtudy, and what by theſe Directions, and what by his Teachers further Inſtruction, where it is needful, to read the Engliſh into Latine *vivâ voce*, then let him go, and write it down in a looſe Paper, and bring it to his Teacher, to conſider of his manner of *writing*,

ting, and *pointing* it; who is accordingly to inform him of what he knows not, and rectifie him in what he ſees amiſs.

That being done, let the Maſter caſt the words out of the Natural into the Artificial Order, and mend the Phraſe, if need be, and then cauſe the Scholar to tranſcribe the exerciſe ſo done into his fair Book, and after that get it to conſtrue, and parſe, and ſay by heart.

As in Tranſlating it out of Engliſh into Latine he obſerved the *Natural Order* of the words, ſo in conſtruing (as it is called) out of Latine into Engliſh, let him exactly, as far as the Idiom of the Languages will permit, obſerve the Natural Order of the words.

Let the Scholars parſing be performed all by himſelf alone, taking the words in the Natural Order, and going of himſelf (without being asked any thing by his Teacher, ſave where he omits any thing neceſſary) from word to word, till he have gone over the whole; declining Nouns and Verbs, and giving Rules for the Genders of the one, and Preterperfect Tenſe and Supines of the other: and ſo of the other parts of Speech let him ſay, what is fit to be ſaid. But eſpecially let him give account of the *Syntax* of every word; why this *Subſtantive* is of the Nominative Caſe; that of the Genitive; the other the Dative, Accuſative, or Ablative. Why this Adjective is of this, that, or the other Caſe, Gender, Number; why this *Relative* is of this, or that Number, or Perſon; and why of this, or the other Caſe, and what governs it; and why this *Verb* is of this Mood, Number, Perſon, *&c.* maintaining and juſtifying every thing by *Grammar Rule*, or Example from Claſſick Authors.

And here by the way let me take occaſion to adviſe, that the ſame courſe be obſerved in his Authors, that he learns, conſtruing his Lectures therein, in the Natural Order, and parſing them all by himſelf alone in that order. It is ſcarce imaginable how much more beneficial this way of *parſing alone* is, beyond the other more uſual way of asking queſtions skippingly, here a word, and there a word, according to the Maſters fancy, liſt, or leiſure. And if there be more than one together, one may take one piece, and another another piece by courſes, till all be done. If one by agreement do get one piece, and another another, it will not be much amiſs to wink at it for a while, till they be a little perfect at it; that plot is quickly broke, by putting them but once or twice out of their road.

Laſtly, To return, on the *Repetition-day*, let the Scholar ſay all his weeks work by heart, and both read it out of Engliſh into Latine, and out of Latine into Engliſh: and where the Teacher thinks needful, let him ask him a Rule for, or a Reaſon of the Conſtruction, or the like.

Engliſh

Engliſh Examples framed according to the Rules of the Three Latine Concords.

THE FIRST CONCORD.

Concordantia Nominativi & Verbi.

¶ Verbum Perſonale cohæret cum Nominativo numero & perſonâ: ut, *Nunquam fera eſt ad bonos mores vida.*

Fortuna nunquam perpetuò eſt bona.

* A Verb Perſonal agreeth with his Nominative Caſe in Number and Perſon: as, *Præceptor legit, vos verò negligitis,* The Maſter readeth, and ye regard not.

* And the Nominative ſhall in making and conſtruing Latine, be ſet before the Verb.

† Examples, where Perſonal Pronouns are only Nominative Caſes.

Indicat. Mood Preſent Tenſe Active with a Sign.

I do fear, thou doſt laugh, he doth ſtrike, we do cry, ye do call, they do anſwer.

Without a Sign.

I love, thou teacheſt, he readeth, we hear, ye learn, they play.

Indic. Preſ. Paſſ.

I am loved, thou art taught, he is read, we are called, ye are ſtricken, they are frighted.

I am bought, thou art ſold, he is beaten, we be blamed, ye be wounded, they be healed.

Preterimperfect Tenſe Active.

I did loſe, thou didſt ſeek, he did find, we did ſit, ye did ſtand, they did walk.

I mourned, thou weepeſt, he laughed, we ſung, ye leap't, they danced.

Paſſive.

I was named, thou waſt called, he was reproved, we were warned, ye were ſcourged, they were killed.

I was girded, thou wert armed, he was cut, we were hurt, ye were led, they were drawn.

Preterperf. Active.

I have ſought, thou haſt overcome, he hath waſhed, we have wiped, ye have ſcratched, they have bitten.

I have mown, thou haſt reaped, ſhe hath ſcattered, we have gathered, ye have laid up, they have carried out.

Paſſive.

I have been carried, thou haſt been bound, he hath been blamed, we have been praiſed, ye have been healed, they have been ſaved.

I have been honoured, thou haſt been crowned, ſhe hath been decked, we have been painted, ye have been nurſed, they have been clothed.

Preterpluperf. Active.

I had tryed, thou hadſt conſent-

ed, he had said, we had believed, ye had held, they had escaped.

I had written, thou hadst received, she had read, we had recalled, ye had replied, they had granted.

Passive:

I had been seen, thou hadst been heard, he had been accused, we had been condemned, ye had been saved, they had been killed.

I had been baptized, thou hadst been confirmed, she had been instructed, we had been corrected, ye had been admonished, they had been commended.

Future Tense Active.

I will ask, thou wilt answer, he will have, we will hold, ye will command, they will obey.

I shall touch, thou shalt perceive, she shall crave, we shall give, ye shall feign, they shall frame.

Passive.

I will be sought, thou wilt be found, he will be taken, we will be freed, ye will be detained, they will be dismissed.

I shall be eased, thou shalt be burdened, she shall be received, we shall be rejected, ye shall be commended, they shall be lamented.

* Except a *question* be asked, and then the Nominative is set after the Verb——

Love I? teacheſt thou? readeth he? hear we? learn ye? play they?

Feared I? laugheſt thou? ſtriketh he? cry we? called ye? anſwered they?

* Or after the Sign of the Verb: as,

Amas tu? Loveſt thou? Venime Rex? Doth the King come?

Do I play? doſt thou learn? doth he profit? do we ſee? do ye hear? do they feel?

Did I loſe? didſt thou ſeek? did he find? did we ſit? did ye ſtand? did they walk?

Have I fought? haſt thou overcome? hath he read? have we heard? have ye ſung? have they danced?

Had I tryed? hadſt thou conſented? had he ſaid? had we believed? had ye ſtaid? had they departed?

Shall I aſk? wilt thou anſwer? will he have? ſhall we hold? ſhall ye command? will they obey?

Am I loved? art thou feared? is he called? are we heard? be ye ſtricken? be they frighted?

Was I touched? wert thou named? was he warned? were we blamed? were ye ſcourged? were they killed?

Have I been honoured? haſt thou been fed? hath ſhe been nurſed? have we been decked? have ye been clothed? have they been ſpoiled?

Had I been heard? hadſt thou been ſeen? had ſhe been condemned? had we been ſaved? had ye been killed? had they been buried?

Shall I be touched? wilt thou be perceived? ſhall he be ſought? ſhall we be found? will ye be led? will they be drawn?

* Likewiſe if the Verb be of the Imperative Mood: as, *Amato ille, Let him love.*

Write thou, fight he, eat ye, drink

drink they, ſing thou, dance he, write ye, read they, do thou go, let him ſtay, run we, do ye ſit, let let them ſtand.

Laugh thou, ſhout he, let us ſleep, walk ye, let them ride.

Paſſive.

Be thou ruled, let him be broken, be we held, be ye bound, let them be ſcourged.

Be thou loved, be he feared, let us be tamed, be ye enriched, be they advanced.

* And ſometimes when this Sign *it*, or *there* cometh before the Engliſh of the Verb: as, *Eſt liber meus*, It is my book; *Venit ad me quidam*, There came one to me.

It is a Horſe; there was a Mare; it is night; it was day. There blows wind; there falls rain; there comes a man; there went a woman. It is I; it was thou. It had been he; it may be we; it might be ye, it ſhall be they.

† Yet it is not neceſſary, that in all theſe Caſes the Nominative be always ſet after the Verb: for *tu eras?* may as well be ſaid, as, *Eras tu? Liber eſt:* as, *Eſt liber.*

Potential Mood Preſent Tenſe.

I may command, thou mayſt intreat, he may weep, we may laugh, ye may fight, they may overcome.

I may be touched, thou mayſt be tickled, he may be burned, we may be buried, ye may be covered, they may be concealed.

Preterimperfect Tenſe.

I might ſay, wouldſt thou believe? ſhould he read? we ought to learn. Could ye ſee? they ſhould think. Should I be commended? thou wouldſt be diſpraiſed. Ought he to be deſpiſed? we ſhould be blamed. Ye would be condemned, ought they to be puniſhed?

Preterperfect Tenſe.

I might have thought, thou wouldſt have believed, he ſhould have ſaid, we ought to have underſtood, ye ſhould have perceived, they would have pronounced.

I ſhould have been afflicted, thou wouldſt have been bewailed, he ought to have been vexed, we ſhould have been freed, ye would have been oppreſſed, they ought to have been warned.

Preterpluperfect Tenſe.

I had felt, thou hadſt feared, he had needed, we had believed, ye had come, they had gone.

I had been compared, thou hadſt been preferred, he had been refuſed, we had been choſen, ye had been accepted, they had been rejected.

Future Tenſe.

I ſhall have eaten, you will have drunk, he will have ſhaken, we ſhall have ſinned, ye will have ſorrowed, they ſhall have repented.

I ſhall have been ſaid, thou ſhalt have been ſeen, he ſhall have been fed, we ſhall have been filled, ye ſhall have been honoured, they ſhall have been feared.

† Examples where Nouns are the Nominative Caſes; and firſt Nouns Subſtantives Proper.

Peter *ſleepeth*, Paul *prayeth*, Joſeph *ariſeth*, Mary *runneth*, Thomas *doubteth*, John *believeth*.

Elizabeth *rejoiced*, Lydia *did hearken*. Cæſar *fought*, Pompey *fled*.

Cicero *hath intreated*, Cato *had reſiſted*, Antony *ſhall drink*, Ovid *will write*.

The Horaces *kill*. *The* Curiaces *are killed*. *The* Decius's *died*. *The* Fabius's *were ſlain*. *The* Romans *have conquered*. *The* Parthians *have been vanquiſhed*.

The Perſians *will flye*. *The* Macedonians *ſhall purſue*. *The* Arabians *ſhall be affrighted*. *The* Ægyptians *will be deſtroyed*.

Doth George *ſpeak*? *Did* Thomas *hear*? *Hath* Edward *taught*? *Had* Richard *learned*? *Will* Robert *profit*?

Weeps Cleopatra? *Sighs* Helena? *Do the* Trojans *mourn*? *Did the* Grecians *ſing*? *Have the* Athenians *fought*? *Had the* Lacedemonians *fled*? *Will the* Gauls *be beaten*? *Shall the* Spaniards *be quieted*?

Would the Huns *have been drowned*? *Might the* Scythians *have been tamed*? *Could the* Carthaginians *have been deſtroyed*? *Should the* Italians *have been enriched*? *Ought the* Brittons *to have been robbed*?

Secondly, Nouns Subſtantives Common.

And firſt without any Particle annexed.

Fire burneth, *wood is burned*, *night hideth*, *day diſcloſeth*, *winter waſteth*, *ſpring draweth on*, *ſummer approacheth*, *harveſt is ended*.

Wine is drunk, *bread is baked*, *meat is eaten*, *fleſh is roaſted*, *corn is ſown*, *hay is mown*.

Doth gold gliſter? *Did ſilver ring*? *hath braſs ruſted*? *will glaſs break*? *is iron heated*? *was lead melted*? *hath copper been beaten*? *had tin been run*? *ſhall pewter be ſcoured*? *Milk is curded*, *cream is ſtrained*, *butter is churned*, *cheeſe is preſſed*, *curds are ſweetned*, *cheeſe-cakes are baked*, *trees grow*, *flowers ſmell*, *leaves ſhoot*, *apples ripen*, *pears hang*, *plums fall*, *berries rot*.

Boughs are ſhaken, *cherries are picked*, *walnuts are daſhed*, *ſmall nuts are gathered*, *ſhells are cracked*, *kernels are eaten*.

Swans ſung, *cocks crowed*, *hens cackled*, *chickens cheaped*, *pies chattered*.

Men fought, *women ſcolded*, *boys wraſtled*, *girls ſcratched*, *children cried*, *ſervants laughed*.

Let Knaves be cudgelled, *let Rogues be ſcourged*, *let beggars be whipped*, *let drunkards be fined*, *let thieves be hanged*, *let rebels be beheaded*. *Should ſcolds be ducked*? *would whores be ſhamed*? *ought whore-maſters to be gelded*? *could adulterers be branded*?

Travellers will talk, *Souldiers will brag*, *Lawyers will wrangle*, *Merchants ſhall complain*, *Scholars will diſpute*, *fools will prate*.

Have eyes ſeen? *have ears heard*? *have noſes ſmelt*? *have tongues taſted*? *have hands felt*?

Hath muſick pleaſed? *had learning flouriſhed*? *will honour be*

be ſought? ſhall vertus be honoured? will vice be puniſhed?

Arts are learned, ignorance is baniſhed, ſervants are beaten, ſlaves are ſold, much is ſpoken, little is minded, nothing is done, all is loſt.

Secondly, with the Particle [*a*] annexed.

A dog barketh, a thief trembleth, a lion roared, a hare ſtarted, a partridge flew, a hawk purſued, a ſword hath cut, a ſpear hath pierced, a mouſe had ſlept, a cat had watched, a bird will flie, a fiſh will ſwim.

Is a pen made? was a book written? hath a pen-knife been whetted? had a line been drawn? will a blot be wiped out? ſhall a whetſtone be rubbed? may a ſponge be ſqueezed.

Thirdly, with the Particle [*the*] annexed,

The father doth ſing, the mother laugheth, the child playeth.

The young man leaped, the old man danced.

The Lamb doth friſk, the Ew did bleat, the Bull hath lowed, the Ox had laboured, the Sow ſhall farrow, the Pig will ſqueak.

The Hog is fatted, the Heifer, was killed, the Dear hath been hunted, the Horn had been winded, the Huntſman will be wearied, the hunting ſhall be ended.

Is the King crowned? were the Rebels vanquiſhed? have the Souldiers been honoured? had the Rebels been ſubdued? will the Citizens be oppreſſed? ſhall the Country-men be burdened?

Let the Fathers command, let the Children obey, let the Commanders direct, let the Souldiers fight.

The Husbands may labour, the Wives ſhould care, the Servants ſhould work, the Children could play.

The Swallows may have come, the Woodcocks might have ſtaid, the Cranes ſhall have departed.

THE SECOND CONCORD.

Concordantia Subſtantivi & Verbi.

¶ Adjectivum cum Subſtantivo, Genere, Numero & Caſu conſentit: ut Juven. *Rara avis in terris, nigroque ſimillima Cygno.*

¶ Ad eundem modum Participia & Pronomina Subſtantivis adnectuntur: Ovid. *Donec eris felix multos numerabis amicos. Nullus ad amiſſas ibit amicus opes.* Senec. *Non hoc primùm pectora vulnus mea ſenſerunt; graviora tuli.*

* The Adjective, whether it be Noun, Pronoun, or Participle, agreeth with his Subſtantive in Caſe, Gender, and Number: as, *Amicus certus in re incerta cernitur*, A ſure friend is tryed in a doubtful matter. *Homo armatus*, A man armed. *Ager colendus*, A field to be tilled.

Hic vir, This man. *Meus herus eſt*, It is my Maſter.

English Examples.

(I.) Where the Adjective comes together with the Subſtantive ſet next after it:

A good man is a wiſe man; and an evil man is a fooliſh man.

A black Swan is a rare bird; and a white Crow is a ſtrange ſight.

The evil life of a good Preacher brings great diſgrace to ſound doctrine.

Evil words corrupt good manners: and evil manners deſtroy great Kingdoms.

Soft fire makes ſweet malt: and ſweet malt makes ſweet Ale.

A tall man with a long neck in a white doublet, killed two Sparrows ſitting on a high houſe with one ſtone.

The untimely death of a loving Husband is a bitter fountain of much grief to a kind wife.

The eager contention of diſagreeing Princes, is the ſad deſtruction of flouriſhing States.

My ſon loves thy daughter: and thy daughter is in love with my ſon.

Our Lad is gone to your houſe: and your houſe is quite gone to decay.

Your Maſter is gone with his Wife to his garden; and our Children with their hands pluck up fine flowers.

She views her wrinkled face in a broken glaſs, and waſheth her yellow teeth with red wine.

He holds three Eggs in one hand: and reads a long letter in a little ſpace.

When Civil wars ceaſe, then expect happy times: and when happy times return, then expect Civil wars.

(II.) Where the Adjective comes together with the Subſtantive ſet next before it.

A houſe full of gold coyned, would not make a Miſer rich.

A Temple adorned with Pictures innumerable, was to be ſeen on a hills top.

A tongue ſpeaking things ſhameful, bringeth to the ſpeaker things harmful.

Water flowing from a fountain incloſed, ran in a chanel newly digged.

A wife bemoaning a husband dead, ſate beſides children weeping.

A Traitor ready to ſhed blood Royal, deſerves to be cut off by a death untimely.

A Conſcience wounded is a burden inſupportable.

Land fruitful and well tilled, brings a crop plentiful in a year ſeaſonable.

(III.) Where the Adjectsve is parted from his Subſtantive coming before it.

A Kingdom is happy when peace is preſerved carefully, and juſtice adminiſtred duly.

The man went away ſorrowful, when he ſaw that a woman lay weeping upon the ground.

Wiſdom is accounted vain, where vice is found to be gainful.

The Shepherd is ſaid to be diligent, when the flock is thriving.

where the Teacher is skilful and painful, there the profiting of the Learner is hopeful.

(IV.) Where the Adjective is parted from his Substantive coming after it.

Happy are the times, when truth and peace do flourish.

Glorious in all Ages will be a wise, righteous, and valiant King.

Hateful is the name, woful is the life, and fearful is the death of a Traitor.

Fair is thought the child by the fond mother.

Terrible, men say, will be the Sentence of the last Judgment.

Unquenchable, it is believed, shall the fire of Hell be.

Great is the peace of an undefiled Conscience.

Mine is the comfort, thine will be the glory of deeds well done.

Adjectives of the Comparative Degree with their Substantives.

Yellow gold is more precious than white silver.

Despised vertue is more chusable than honoured vice.

Cicero *was eloquenter than* Cato: *but* Cato *was constanter than* Cicero.

Of the two Kingdoms, Spain *is the larger, but* France *is the richer.*

Unjust Peace is better than a just war: and war abroad is more desirable than war at home.

A little with quietness is more wishable than a great deal with vexation.

The Sea is deeper than a Bucket, and Eternity is longer than Time.

Adjectives of the Superlative Degree with their Substantives.

The shortest day hath the longest night.

The holiest life may expect the happiest death: and the best work hope for the biggest reward.

The learnedest Clerks are not always the wisest men: nor are the best Preachers evermore the holiest Christians.

Cicero *was the most eloquent of Pleaders: but* Cæsar *was the most prudent of Commanders.*

Solomon *was the wisest of Kings; and* Hercules *was the strongest of men.*

Socrates *was accounted the wisest of Philosophers; and* Alexander *the most fortunate of Conquerors.*

Aristides *was the justest among the* Grecians; *and* Crassus *the richest among the* Romans.

THE THIRD CONCORD.

Concordantia Relativi & Antecedentis.

* When ye have a Relative, ask the question *who* or *what?* and the word that answers to the question shall be the Antecedent to it.

The Antecedent most commonly is a word that goeth before the Relative, and is rehearsed again of the Relative.

The

The Antecedent is sometimes rehearsed again expressly with the Relative in the same clause that it is in: as,

Cùm viderem ex ea parte homines, cujus partis nos vel principes numerabamur. Cic.

Diem scito esse nullum, quo die non dico pro reo. Cic.

Legem promulgavérat, quâ lege regnum Jubæ publicaverat. Cæs.

So in English.

I have a horse, which horse is twenty years old.

He bought a house, of which house his Grandfather had been the owner.

Thou hast a friend, to which friend thou mayst commit all thy secrets.

A certain bird was sitting on a tree, which bird one felled thence with a stone.

I have a dog, than which Dog no Lion is more fierce.

† And when the Antecedent is rehearsed together with the Relative, it is of the same Case also, as well as of the same Gender, and Number, and Person that the Antecedent is of: as in the forenamed Examples.

But mostly the Antecedent is not set together in the same clause with the Relative, but in another clause before it distant from it: and then as it sometimes happens to be of the same Case with it, so many times it differs in Case from it.

¶ Relativum cum Antecedente concordat genere, numero, & persona: ut, *Vir bonus est quis? Qui consulta patrum, qui leges juraque servat.*

* The Relative agreeth with his Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person: as, *Vir sapit qui pauca loquitur*, That man is wise that speaketh few things or words.

English Examples.

Thou hatest me without a cause, who am thy best friend in the world.

I love thee dearly, who yet art most unkind to me.

Despisest thou me, who am the Queen of Beauties?

He married his daughter, whom he had so dearly loved, to an unworthy person.

They persecute us innocent men, who have done good to them.

We Fathers love you children, who are obedient unto us.

Husbands love us wives, who are kind to them.

We men honour you women, who adorn your selves with vertue and modesty.

I cannot but love that man dearly, who hath been kind to me in my adversity.

I cannot but keep that Mare well, which hath saved me in time of danger.

I cannot but think that Kingdom happy, which is governed by a just and merciful King.

Happy are those Kings whom Subjects love, and enemies fear.

Miserable are those Countries, which War and Famine do vex and waste.

Glorious are those times in which Peace and Truth do flourish.

Now

Now when the Teacher diſcerns his Scholar by this Practice to be any thing perfect at underſtanding and finding out the Natural Order of Words; and that he can make a piece of ordinary Engliſh into plain and true Latine in that way, then let him put him forward to make his Latine good, as well as true. Now that will be done by teaching him ſome competency of skill in theſe Five things, viz. (1) The Artificial Order of Words. (2) The Uſe of Phraſes. (3) The Variation of Phraſes. (4) The Elegancies of the Particles. (5) The Idioms of both the Languages Engliſh and Latine. Of all which I ſhall ſpeak ſomething in Order.

CHAP. V.

Of the Artificial Order and Elegant placing of Words.

THE *Artificial Ordering* and Elegant placing of Words conduceth very much to the making of Latine Good. To evince this, if there were need, it might ſuffice to ſay, that of the very ſame words, according to the different Placing of them, may be made Latine very Elegant, or very Unelegant. For inſtance, the words *Rogo, ut venias ad me*, will be very Elegant, if placed thus, *Rogo, ut ad me venias*; or thus, *Ad me, ut venias, rogo*; or thus, *Ut ad me venias, rogo*; or thus, *Ad me, rogo, ut venias*. But very Unelegant, if placed thus: *Rogo ut me venias ad*; or, *Rogo ad me venias ut*; or, *Rogo me venias ut ad*; or thus, *Rogo me venias ad ut*; or, *Ut me venias, rogo ad*; or, *Ut venias me rogo ad*: or indeed almoſt, if not altogether, any other way. That the Learner therefore may have ſome skill in that Art, let the Teacher give him ſome Rules. And when he hath made his Engliſh into plain true Latine, according to the Natural Order, let him then, according to his Rules, tranſpoſe and place it in the Artificial Order; and when he hath done, ſhew it to his Maſter: who is to ſhew him where he fails; and to amend what he miſtakes in: and this done, let him again tranſcribe it into his fair Book, and then commit it to memory, as before.

Sed & verborum eſt ſtructura quædam, duas res efficiens, numerum, & lenitatem. *Cic. de Opt. Gen. Orat.*

For the Eaſe of the *Teacher*, and Uſe of the *Learner*, I ſhall here ſet down a Collection of Rules for Artificial Ordering and Elegant Placing of Words.

Rules of Placing words.

And firſt of the Parts of a Compounded Word. The Parts of *Rule* 1.

a Compounded Word may be Elegantly divided by ſome other Word coming betwixt the Parts, as,

Rem verò *publicam* amiſimus. Cic.

De *juris* quoque *Conſultis*. Suet.

Quod judicium *cunque*. Cic.

Me certè in omnibus rebus *ſatis* noſtræque conjunctioni amorique *facturum*—— Cic.

Priùs, inquit, *quàm* hoc circulo excedas. Val. Max.

Coturnices *antè* veniunt *quàm* grues. Plin.

Cùm multis annis *poſt* petiiſſem, *quàm* Prætores fuiſſent. Cic.

Per mihi *gratum* erit— Cic. Att. 5. 10.

Cùm tu argento *poſt* omnia *ponas*. Hor. Sat. 1. 1.

Secondly of Words in a Sentence.

Rule 1. *The Relative, though of the Nom. Caſe, ſtands in the beginning of his own clauſe.*

1. Firſt, The Words that go together in the Natural Order, are parted aſunder in the Order Artificial, and the Governed come before thoſe that govern; viz. the Oblique Caſes in the beginning, the Verb in the end, and the Nominative Caſe in the middle betwixt both: as,

Munitiſſimam hoſtium civitatem Cæſar occupavit.

Petulanti bonos linguâ conſectari deſine.

Secondly, The Subſtantive of the Genitive Caſe is elegantly ſet before the Subſtantive that governs it: as,

Rule 2. Immortalitatis amore *flagravit*. Cic.

Cum ipſius victoriæ conditione *jure omnes victi occidiſſemus*, clementiæ tuæ judicio *conſervati ſumus*. Cic.

Rule 3. 3. Thirdly, The Adjective is uſually ſet before the Subſtantive: as,

Ampla domus dedecori domino ſæpe fit. Cic.

Tenaciſſimi ſumus eorum, quæ *rudibus annis* percepimus. Quintil.

Exceptions.

Yet ſeveral ſorts of Adjectives are ſometimes elegantly ſet after their Subſtantives.

Except. 1. (1.) Notes of Univerſality, whether Affirmative or Negative, as, *omnis*, *nullus*, and *nemo*: as,

Virtutis *laus omnis* in actione conſiſtit. Cic.

Ut ad te ſcribendi meo arbitratu, *facultas nulla* detur. Cic.

Hujus igitur criminis, te accuſante, *mentio nulla* fiet. Cic.

Majus mihi dare *beneficium nullum* potes. Cic.

So *Nemo*.

At verò hujus gloriæ, *C. Cæſar*, quam es paulò antè adeptus, *ſocium* habes *neminem*. Cic.

Note. Of theſe *omnis* and *nemo* come elegantly in the end of a Sentence: as, *Ad quam hæc referenda ſunt omnia*. Cic. 1. Off. 15. *Eâ liberalitate utamur, quæ proſit amicis, noceat nemini*. Id.

ſib. *Eundem hunt unum ab hoſtibus metui, præterea neminem.* Cic. pro lege Manil. *Quis legatos unquam audivit ſine Senatuſconſulto? ante te nemo.* Cic. in Vatin. So *nullus. Grave eſt hoc crimen in* Verrem: *grave, me agente: te accuſante, nullum.* Cic. in Cæcilium.

(2.) Cardinal Numerals: as, *Except.* 2.

Dies circiter *quindecim* iter fecerunt. Cæſ.

Ad hominum *millia decem* undique coegit. Cæſ.

Omnes omnium charitates *patria una* complexa eſt. Cic.

(3.) Comparatives and Superlatives, which in the end of a Sentence many times ſtand very gracefully: as, *Except.* 3.

Nihil illo regno *ſpoliatius, nihil* rege *egentius.* Cic.

Fierique ſtudebam ejus prudentia doctior. Cic.

Imperatorem liberaliſſimum, ætatem opportuniſſimam, commendationem certè *ſingularem* habes. Cic.

Heſterno die præmia legatis Allobrogum, Titoque Vulturcio dediſtis ampliſſima. Cic. Cat. 4.

Hanc ego ſubtilitatem, philoſophia quidem digniſſimam judico, ſed ab eorum causâ, qui ita diſſerunt, remotiſſimam. Cic. Ac. 4. 14.

(4.) Pronominals: as, *Except.* 4.

Ardeo cupiditate incredibili, neque ut ego arbitror reprehendendâ, *nomen* ut *noſtrum ſcriptis* illuſtretur & celebretur *tuis.* Cic.

Sunt *ingeniis noſtris* ſemina innata virtutum. Cic.

(5.) Adjectives of two Syllables, if their Subſtantives be of more Syllables: as, *Except.* 5.

Quis *animo æquo* videt eum, quem impurè ac flagitioſè putet vivere? Cic.

Quæ res habet *inflationem magnam.* Cic.

4. Fourthly, Betwixt the Adjective and the Subſtantive ſeveral things are elegantly inſerted. *Rule* 4.

(1.) If the Subſtantive and Adjective be of the Genitive Caſe, then the former Subſtantive will come elegantly between them: as, *Sect.* 1.

Quid credas aliud, quàm *divinæ* partem *mentis* his ineſſe? *Quint. de Apib.*

Cæſaris clementia *Majeſtatis* pacem & tranquillitatem Provinciis dedit.

Philoſophia *omnium* mater *Artium*—— Cic.

(2.) If the Subſtantive and Adjective be not of the Genitive Caſe, then the Subſtantive of the Genitive Caſe will come elegantly betwixt them: as, *Sect.* 2.

Hæc eſt *vera* juſtitiæ *laus*——

Ob *inclytam* viri *religionem.* Flor.

(3.) If the Subſtantive be governed of any Prepoſition, the Prepoſition will come elegantly between the Subſtantive and the Adjective: as, *Sect.* 3.

Certâ de causâ nondum adducor ut faciam. Cic.

Hoc

Hoc assequêre, ut *quam* in *partem* accipias minus laborem. Cic.
Ei *nullâ* in re defuit. Cic.
Quam ob *rem* venerim, dicam. Plaut.

Sect. 4. (4.) If the Substantive be not governed of any Prepositon, yet a Prepositon with his Casual word may elegantly come between the Adjective and his Substantive: as,

Casta ad virum *matrona* parendo imperat. Publ.

Sect. 5. (5.) Between the Adjective and the Substantive, may elegantly be set not only Nouns, and Prepositions alone, or with their Cases; but single words of any sort almost: as,

Pronoun. *Quamcunque* ei *fidem* dederis, præstabo. Cic.
Queruntur *accusatores* se *idoneos* non habere. Cic.
Ego post *supplicationes* mihi *decretas* in *Dalmatiam* profectus sum. Cic.
Subcisiva quædam *tempora* incurrant, quæ ego perire non patior. Cic.
Verb. Hoc affirmo, & hoc *pace* dicam *tuâ*. Cic.
Adverb. *Maximam* verò *partem* quasi suo jure fortuna sibi vendicat. Cic.
Neque *ulla* unquam *ætas* de tuis laudibus conticescet. Cic.
Prepositon. *Quo* in *negotio* tamen *illa* me *res*, Judices, consolatur. Cic.
Yea Clauses: as, *Magnum* profectò *laborem Cæsar* assumpsit, quem fermè ab *ipsis* ad nos venisse *Gallos* aiunt, ut *hostis* suæ quidem *Majestati rebelles*, *nostris* autem supra modum *rebus* infestos armis subigeret. *Quam* ob *causam perpetuum* illi *amorem* & *gratiam* debemus *immortalem*.

Note. Note. If any thing come between the Substantive and the Adjective, then may either indifferently be set before other.

Rule 5. 5. Fifthly, The Relative *qui* is elegantly set before the expressed Substantive, to which it refers, especially if any other words come between: as,

Quem cum isto *sermonem* habueris, procul stans accepi.
Propter eum, *quem* sibi ipse finxerat, *principatum*. Cic.

Note. Note. If *qui* in one clause of a sentence answer to *hic*, *is*, or *idem* in another clause; that clause in which *qui* is, will very elegantly come first.

Quem puerum vidisti formosum, *hunc* vides deformem in senectâ. Varro.
Qui semel verecundiæ fines transierit; *eum* bene & naviter oportet esse impudentem. Cic.
Qui dolet rebus alicujus adversis, *idem* alicujus etiam secundis dolet. Cic.
Quas enim copias his suppeditari æquius est, *eas* transferunt ad alienos. Cic.

Rule 6. 6. Sixthly, A Pronoun Primitive comes elegantly between a Pronoun

Pronoun Poſſeſſive, and the Subſtantive that it agrees with: as,

Familiaritas mihi *tua* non injucunda eſt.

Tuo tibi *judicio* eſt utendum. Cic.

Arguitur *domi* te *tuæ* interficere voluiſſe. Cic.

Gravi teſte privatus ſum *amoris ſummi* erga te *mei*. Cic.

Suum ſe *negotium* agere dicunt. Cic.

7. Seventhly, The Pronoun *ipſe* being to be ſet after any Pronoun Primitive in an Oblique Caſe, may elegantly come either before, or after it, in the Nominative Caſe: as, *Rule 7.*

Qui *ipſe ſibi* ſapiens prodeſſe nequit, nequicquam ſapit. Cic.

Odi ſapientem qui *ſibi ipſe* ſapiens non eſt. Cic.

Hæc ſcripſi; non ut de *me ipſe* dicerem, ſed ut—— Cic.

Non egeo medicinâ, *ne ipſe* conſolor. Cic.

Tibi unam timendum ſit, ne *ipſe tibi* defuiſſe videare. Cic.

Qui me violare volent, *ſe ipſos* judicabunt. Cic.

Æquitas enim lucet *ipſa* per *ſe*. Cic.

Per *me ipſe* de te cogitabam. Cic. Att. 3, 10.

Animus à *ſe ipſe* diſſidens. Cic. Fin. 1. 18.

8. Eighthly, Prepoſitions moſtly come before their Caſual words: as, *Rule 8.*

Illa præſidia, quæ *pro templis* omnibus cernitis. Cic.

Quâ *in vitâ* tantum abeſt ut voluptates ſectentur, etiam curas, ſollicitudines, vigilias perferunt. Cic.

Ego ipſi, quòd *de ſuâ ſententiâ* deceſſerim, pœnitendum puto. Cic.

Accepi *à te* literas, quibus videris vereri, ut epiſtolas illas acceperim. Cic.

Yet ſome Præpoſitions are not unelegantly ſet after their Caſe, *Except.* not only in *Poets*, but in *Orators*: as,

Senatus, *quas ad* ſolerent, referendum cenſuit. Cic.

Nemitem poſſe dare alteri matrimonium, niſi *quem penes* ſit patrimonium. Quintil.

Cordi mihi fuit, priuſquam ad te irem, quærere exploraréque, quonam modo veteres noſtri particulâ iſtâ, *quâ de* agitur, uſi ſunt. A. Gell.

Quos adverſum multi ex *Bithyniâ* volentes occurrêre falſum filium arguituri—— Sal.

Quæ ſi *quos inter* ſocietas aut eſt, aut fuit, aut futura eſt, eorum eſt habendus ad ſummum naturæ bonum optimus beatiſſimuſque comitatus. Cic.

Conſequeris tamen, ut eos ipſos, *quos contra* ſtatuas æquos placatóſque dimittas. Cic. *Quos contra* diſputant. Cic.

Perturbari animos neceſſe eſſe dicunt, ſed adhibent modum, *quem ultra* progredi non oporteat. Cic.

Quem locum *Ægyptum verſus* finem imperii habuere *Carthaginienſes*. Sal.

Poſtula-

Poſtulavit ut aliquem populus daret, *quicum* communicaret. Cic.

Qu. Suffidium, quocum mihi omnes neceſſitudines ſunt, diligengentius commendo. Cic.

Note 1. 1. Note. *Cum* is always ſet after *me, te, ſe, nobis,* and *vobis*; and *tenus* after his Caſual word.

Note 2. 2. And between the Prepoſition and his Caſe may other words be elegantly ſet, eſpecially the Genitive Caſe governed of that Subſtantive, which the Prepoſition comes before: as,

Per ego, te *Deos* oro, ut ne illis animum inducas credere. Ter.

Ex animi *ſententiâ*. Ter.

Pro rerum *magnitudine*. Cic.

Rule 9. 9. Ninthly, Betwixt the Participle and that Perſon of the Verb *Sum*, whereof the Preterperfect Tenſe of a Verb Paſſive or Deponent is made up, there may ſome word be elegantly placed: as,

Diu *ſum* equidem *reluctatus*.

Decretum à Senatu *eſt*.

Fructum *eſt* ampliſſimum *conſecutus*. Cic.

Hujus gloriæ, quam *es* paulò antè *adeptus*, ſocium habes neminem. Cic.

Rule 10. 10. Tenthly, The Vocative Caſe; the Verbs *inquit* and *ait*, and the Particles *enim, autem,* and *verò* have uſually ſomething placed in the beginning of a ſentence before them: as,

Quanquam te *Marce fili*, annum jam audientem *Cratippum*, idque *Athenis*, oportet—— Cic.

Ennio delector, *ait*,—— Cic.

Quam *inquit*, vellem neſcire literas. Suet. Ner. c. 10.

Nec *enim* is es quem forma iſta declarat. Cic.

Inanimatum eſt *enim* omne, quod impulſu agitur externo. Cic.

Erat *autem* difficile rem tantam inchoatam relinquere. Cic.

In quo *autem* deſiderare te ſignificabis. Cic.

Illæ *verò* virtutes virum bonum videntur potius attingere. Cic.

Rule 11. 11. Eleventhly, Words of Near and of Contrary ſignification, are elegantly placed together in a ſentence: as,

Res mihi *inviſæ viſæ* ſunt.

Eveniunt *digna dignis*. Sal.

Doctus indocto quid præſtat? quod *cæco videns*. Plaut.

Maximis minima conferam. Cic.

Caſta ad virum matrona *parendo imperat*. Publ.

Per dexteram te iſtam oro, quam regi Deiotaro, *hoſpes hoſpiti* porrexiſti. Cic.

Fit in *dominatu ſervitus*, in *ſervitute dominatus*. Cic.

Quoad ejus præſtabat judicio *diſſimilitudini ſimilitudo*. Cic.

Amor jubet meo *obedientem me* eſſe ſervo liberum. Plaut.

Rule 12. 12. Twelfthly, In a Contexture of things related each to other

ther what is the more worthy, or before the other in nature, is elegantly placed formoſt in order: viz. Agent before Patient, *&c* as,

Non *ego eum* cum ſummis viris comparo—— Cic.

Roga ipſum quemadmodum *ego eum* Arimini acceperim. Cic.

Mors in claris *viris* & *fœminis* dux in cœlum ſolet eſſe. Cic.

Dies, noctesque torqueor. Cic. Tu, ſi *dies noctesque* memineris. Cic. Fam. 11. 5.

13. Thirteenthly, In *Extenuating*, the more weighty things ought to go before the leſs or lighter: as, *Rule* 13.

Nulla *crux* ibi fuit, nulla *nex*, nulla *verberatio*, imo ne *cuſtodia* quidem.

But in *Aggravating*, the more weighty things ought to follow the leſs or lighter: as,

Civem Romanum *vincire, verberare*, in crucem *tollere.*

14. Fourteenthly, In the placing of words, avoid all ſuch ſetting of them, as may beget *Obſcurity, Ambiguity*, or *Ill ſound.* *Rule* 14.

(1.) *Obſcurity*, as in that Sentence.

Fuit in hâc virtus iſta quondam republicâ, for

Fuit iſta quondam in hâc republicâ virtus. Cic.

(2.) *Ambiguity*; as in thoſe { *Da temetum* / *Date metum* }: which

becauſe they may be miſtaken either for other; therefore it is better to ſay *Temetum da*; or *Metum date.* So rather ſay *Atria ſumma*, than *Summa atria*, becauſe this laſt way the words may be miſtaken for *Summa tria*, or *Sumatria*, an Iſle. Rather ſay *Scivine ego*, than *egone ſcivi*: becauſe this laſt may be miſtaken for *ego neſcivi.*

(3.) *Ill ſound* either——

1. By the meeting together of many either *Vowels*; as, *Poſtea eò itum eſt*, for which rather ſay *eò poſt itum eſt*: or harſh *Conſonants*; as, *Ingens ſtrepitus*; for which rather ſay *ſtrepitus ingens.* So, *Si puer ingenio eo eſſet*: for which rather ſay *eo ſi puer eſſet ingenio, quo eſſe dicitur*, &c.

2. By the coming together of many either *Monoſyllables*; as, *Collocutus ſum cum illo*; for which rather ſay *Collocutus cum illo ſum.* Or words of many ſyllables of like ſound; as, *Harum ſcribendarum literarum occaſio hæc eſt*; for which rather ſay, *Harum ſcribendi literarum hæc occaſio eſt.* So, with *Cicero, Eorum inſignia deorum*, than *eorum deorum*, or *deorum eorum inſignia.*

A prudent intermixture of words long and ſhort, of like and of different ſound, beginning and ending interchangeably with Vowels and Conſonants, is the one remedy of theſe faults.

The greateſt care for the well running of words, is to be had in the beginning and end, eſpecially in the four or five laſt Syllables.

Thoſe Sentences are thought to be cloſed ſweetly, that end in words of like Syllables with theſe; *videatur; cariorem; parabat; tuum: Cœpiſſe; tribueretur; miſerim; conſervâſſem;* or any Tenſe of *Sum* after a Participle of the Præter Tenſe, or Future in *dus:* as,

Vĭdĕātŭr] *Ut hæc à virtute donata, cætera à virtute commodata eſſe videantur.* Cic.

Cārĭōrĕm] *Neque ulla unquam ætas de tuis laudibus conticeſcet* Cic. —*Ut eos ſæpe, quos nunquam vidimus, diligamus.*

Părābat] *Et ſi eſſet aliquis, ejus certè non eſſet, qui in eadem cauſa & fortuna fuiſſet.* Cic.

Tŭŭm] —*Qua qui apud te, Cæſar, utetur, ſuam citiùs abjiciet humanitatem, quam extorquebit tuam.* Cic. *Et quicquid eſt proſperè geſtum, id pene omne ducit ſuum.* Cic.

Cœpīſſĕ] *Semperque immortalitatis amore flagravit.* Cic.

Tribŭĕrētŭr] —*Multùque uterque dux faceret armatus, quæ idem togatus fieri prohibuiſſet.* Cic.

Mīsĕrĭm] *Hæc qui faciat, non ego eum cum ſummis viris comparo, ſed ſimillimum Deo judico.* Cic. *Ut quantum operibus tuis diuturnitas detrahet, tantum afferat laudibus* Cic.

Cōnsērvāſſĕm] —*Si quenquam alium provinciæ præfeciſſet.* Cic. *Te verò—— quibus laudibus efferemus? quibus ſtudiis proſequemur? quâ benevolentiâ complectemur?* Cic.

tus ſum] —*Ut nemo mirari debeat, humana conſilia divina neceſſitate eſſe ſuperata.* Cic. *Et hoc pace dicam tuâ, nullam in his eſſe laudem ampliorem, quam eam, quam hodierno conſecutus es.* Cic.

dus ſum] *Cum omnibus civibus, tum maximè nobis, qui à te conſervati ſumus, providenda eſt.* Cic.

To which may be added Sentences ending in theſe or the like words, or feet.

Rĕmīsīſtī] *Ipſam victoriam viciſſe videris, cum ea ipſa, quæ illa erat adepta, victis remiſiſti.* Cic.

Irātĭŏr] —*Cum pacis autores conſervandos ſtatim cenſuerit, cæteris fuerit iratior.* Cic. *Nimis iracundam fuiſſe victoriam.* Cic. *Doleoque, cum reſp. immortalis eſſe debeat, eam in unius mortalis animo conſiſtere.* Cic.

Rĕlĭnquēmŭs] *Parumne igitur, inquies, gloriam magnam relinquemus?* Cic.

Cōnsĭlĭī] —*Ut illud fati fuiſſe videatur, hoc conſilii.* Cic.

Rĕpŭdĭārī] —*Non modo pacem, ſed orationem etiam civium pacem efflagitantium repudiari.* Cic.

Vŏlūntārĭŭm] —*Prudens & ſciens, tanquam ad interitum ruerem voluntarium.* Cic.

Extĭmēſcēntĕm] —*Tum etiam ipſius victoriæ ferocitatem extimeſcentem.* Cic.

Dīlĭgēntĭam] —*Simul enim augebimus & diligentiam.* Cic.

—*Quam*

——*Quam ipſa æternitas ſemper intuebitur.* Cic.

Diſsĭdēbāmŭs] *Non enim conſiliis ſolum & ſtudiis, ſed armis etiam & caſtris diſſidebamus.* Cic.

But in theſe things liberty is very great, *all things being to be meaſured by the ear*; in the judgment of which, if a Sentence ſound well, it matters not much what Syllables it conſiſts of.

Thirdly of Clauſes in a Period.

As *Words* and *Phraſes* in a ſimple Sentence, ſo the ſeveral *Clauſes* of a compounded Sentence, may be placed with more or leſs Elegancy: touching which the only Rule is, That the more frequent the Tranſpoſition is, the more Elegant is the Sentence, ſo no diſorder or obſcurity follow thereon: as for Example.

Sed & ſententiæ ſuam compoſitionem habent, & ad probandam rem accommodatum ordinem. *Cic. de Opt. Gen. Orat.*

Nihil allatum eſt, ne rumoris quidem.
Nihil, ne rumoris quidem allatum eſt.

Si à nobis deficis, moleſtè fero.
Moleſtè fero, ſi à nobis deficis.
Moleſtè, ſi à nobis deficis, fero.

Rogo, ut ad me venias.
Ut ad me venias, rogo.
Ad me ut venias, rogo.
Ad me, rogo, ut venias.

Gratum eſt mihi, quod ad me ſcribis.
Quod ad me ſcribis, gratum mihi eſt.
Mihi, quod ad me ſcribis, gratum eſt.

The main thing here to be avoided is the *Hyperbaton*, or confuſed intermixture of Words, belonging to one clauſe with the words that belong to another, which either alters the Senſe, or renders the Sentence extremely difficult: as if one ſhould ſay,

Quem cum iſto ſermonem audivi, habuiſti; for
Quem cum iſto habuiſti ſermonem, audivi.

Is amicior mihi vivit, atque nullus eſt; for
Amicior mihi nullus vivit, atque is eſt; or
Nullus mihi amicior, atque is eſt, vivit.

Sunt oculos clari, qui cernis ſydera tanquam, for
Cernis oculos, qui clari ſunt tanquam ſydera.

Penè macros arſit, dum turdos verſat in igne; for
Penè arſit, dum macros in igne turdos verſat.

And theſe few Rules or Obſervations may ſuffice to be inſtilled

into a Learner, till Time and Reading do perfect his Style. He that would see more Observations of this Nature, may consult Mr. *Brinsle*'s *Gram. School*, ch. 11. Mr. *Clark*'s *Dux Grammaticus*, p. 267. and *Formulæ Oratoriæ*, pag. 335. *Edit. anno* 1659. * But especially *Buchler*'s Elegancies; *Franciscus Sylvius*'s *Progymnasmata*; and *Comenius*'s *Ars Ornatoria*, five *Grammatica Elegans*, especially ch. 4. The perusal of which Books cannot but be hugely improving to any ingenious Learner, as containing in them a world of the choicest and most elegant passages, that are to be found in the best extant Authors, brought as instances of their Observations, and Examples of their Rules. And thus much touching the *Artificial Ordering* and *Elegant Placing of Words* in Sentences.

* *Horn de Usu Authoris, p.* 59.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Use of Phrases.

IF the *Artificial Ordering* of plain words conduce much to the making of the Learner's Latine good, much more will a handsom contexture of *Elegant Roman Phrases*, or Forms of speaking, used by the best and purest Writers of the Latine Tongue. Of those therefore the Learner is to be exhorted to get into his head what store his memory shall be able to bear; and to be taught how to use them in his own Compositions. For the first of these, the getting of his Memory well stored with Phrases, which is a work of some difficulty, requiring time, and diligence, and observation, the Teacher may be pleased to put his Learner upon some of these or the like practices: As first to have a fair *Paper Book* on purpose to write down Latine Phrases and Elegant Forms of speaking in, as he shall occasionally meet with them in his Lessons; and to write them daily down therein; and give a weekly account of them without Book unto his Master. Next to make an Abstract of all the Forms of speaking, and Phrases contained in *Godwin*'s Latine *Antiquities*, and to repeat them to the Master by heart three or four times over, in parts, by ten, or twenty, or a greater number in a morning, according as his capacity shall be; and then by double that number, and still in larger proportion till all be well imprinted into the memory. Where that they may be the better retained, let the Learner throughly read and digest that Book, till he be so well acquainted with the ground and rise of every Form or Phrase, that he can readily upon hearing the Phrase, give the true account of the rise and occasion thereof. After this to make

make an Abſtract of all the Forms and Phraſes contained in that excellent little Book called *Hermes Anglo-Latinus*, where are ſo many excellent Forms and Phraſes, as well-nigh comprehend all the Regular Conſtructions of Grammar, yea and the Figurative ones too: and let them alſo in the ſame Method and manner be gotten by heart, and repeated. He may be much improved alſo in this way by what may be found of this nature in my own *Treatiſes of Engliſh Particles* and *Idioms*. Laſtly, the Teacher may make an Abſtract of ſome one Phraſe-book of beſt note and account (ſuch as *Wincheſters* Phraſes, Mr. *Huiſis* Phraſes, or the like) taking only two or three of the beſt Phraſes of every Head, and give his Scholar that to tranſcribe and get by heart. Theſe Practices may be ſome preſent trouble to the doer: yet done for once, they are done for always; and the benefit is ſuch as will vaſtly recompenſe the time and trouble. And becauſe it is my deſign to ſave both the Teacher and Learner all the time and labour that I can, therefore having two ſuch Abſtracts out of *Godwins Antiquities*, and *Hermes Anglo-Latinus* as I ſpake of, lying by me many years ago, made for my private uſe, I have thought good here to communicate them, which I do the more earneſtly recommend to uſe, in regard the *One*, beſides the many choice Phraſes that it contains, gives a great inſight into the *Roman Cuſtoms*, eſpecially if recourſe be had occaſionally unto the Author for the underſtanding of the Phraſes, and ſo may prove a ſucceſsful key for the opening of many difficulties in the beſt of Latine Authors, *Cicero* eſpecially: The *Other*, beſides the many *Elegant Idioms* or *Proprieties* of Engliſh and Latine that it comprehends, gives a good inlet into the knowledge of the *Ornate Grammatical Conſtruction*, for the moſt, if not all, of whoſe Rules it furniſhes the Reader with very proper and pertinent Examples,

A Collection of Phraſes out of *Hermes* Anglo-Latinus.

I *Will make thee do it*, i. e. *conſtrain.*	COgam te hoc facere.
Make [i. e. *turn*] *this into Latine.*	Verte hoc Latiné.
He made [i. e. *feigned*] *as though he wept.*	Simulavit quaſi fleret, ſe flere.
I will make them friends [i. e. *reconcile.*	Redigam eos in gratiam.
I would be loth to make thee be beaten [i. e. *give cauſe*	Non lubens committerem, ut vapules.
He makes a mouth [i. e. *writhes.*	Os intorquet.

I will make good [i. e. *fill up or ſupply.*	Suppleho.
He made much of me.	Comiter me tractavit.
What did you make of this years crop?	Quanti vendiſti iſtius anni proventum?
Make a Leg.	Flecte poplitem.
Make the Bed.	Sterne lectum.
To make War.	Bellum gerere.
Make haſte.	Feſtina; propera.
To make a Verſe.	Carmen componere.
To make Water.	Urinam reddere.
He made a Law.	Legem tulit.
Make ready Supper.	Para; adorna cœnam.
Make a Fire.	Exſtrue ignem.
You ſhall never make me believe this tale.	Nunquam mihi fidem facies hujus fabulæ.
You make a fool of me.	Ludis me; pro ludibrio habes me.
He made him a King.	Regem eum creavit.
He makes a ſtir about nothing.	Tumultuatur in re nihili.
I will make an end.	Abſolvam, finiam, finem faciam.
He being weary lay down, he laid him down when he was weary.	Ille defeſſus decubuit.
He cracks of his exploits, wealth.	Crepat facinora; divitias.
He ſaith nothing for fear, he is in ſuch a fear that he is not able to ſay a word.	Tacet metu.
I bought it for neither more nor leſs, I paid juſt ſo much for it.	Nec pluris, nec minoris emi.
It is I. It was thou.	Ego ſum. Tu eras.
It is not thou canſt ſcare me.	Non tu is es qui me terrere potes.
I am ſound.	Valeo.
He is pale.	Pallet.
He is paliſh, or ſomewhat pale.	Pallidior eſt.
What is he good for?	Cui rei utilis eſt?
Who will go with me? I will.	Quis mecum ibit? ego ibo.
My poor help.	Opella mea.
A petty King.	Regulus.
A pedling Poet.	Poetaſter.
A little Fellow.	Homunculus.
A poor gain.	Lucellum.
Dear heart.	Corculum.
A ſmall field.	Agellus.
Pretty well; ſomewhat better.	Meliuſculè.
Somewhat fearful.	Timidiuſculus; timidior; ſubtimidus.

A poor pittance. Particula; portiuncula.
A Brick-Wall. Murus coctilis.
A Summer-Apple. Præcox pomum.
Houſhold-affairs. Res domeſticæ.
An Eye-witneſs. Oculatus teſtis.
In the top of the houſe. In ſummis ædibus.
In the bottom of Hell. In imo Tartaro.
The furtheſt part of the world. Ultima terra.
At the end of the Town. Ad extremum oppidum.
About the lower end of the ſide. Quaſi in extrema pagina.
At break of day. Primâ luce.
The reſt of the money. Reliqua pecunia.
In the midſt of the City. In urbe media.
Born the fourth day of the Moon, in an unluckie hour. Quartâ Lunâ natus.

I am here that did it. Adſum qui feci.
This houſe of yours is like to fall. Hæc tua domus eſt ruitura.
This pride of hers will come down. Ejus ſuperbia detumeſcet.
Your own Knavery wil bewray you. Tua ipſius nequitia te prodet.
I ſaw him my ſelf with my own eyes. Egomet ipſe vidi meis ipſius oculis.
They their own ſelves did it with their own hand. Illi ipſi fecerunt ſuâ ipſorum manu.
Thou thy own ſelf. Tu ipſe.
Here is the man his own ſelf. Adeſt ipſe homo.
He himſelf, or his own ſelf. Ille ipſe.
I inquired of a friend of mine, and he told me. Sciſcitabar à quodam familiari meo, qui nunciavit mihi.
He hath not wherewithal to buy a halter to hang himſelf. Non habet, quo reſtim emat ad ſuſpendium.
A ſtorm will ſink a Ship. Procella ſubmerget navim.
The Ship ſinketh. Navis ſubſidit.
Look hither. Reſcipe huc.
He looks like a ſlouen. Videtur ſordidus.
It will break before it will bow. Priùs frangitur, quàm flectitur.
What haſt-thou been doing? Quid feciſti?
I have been writing. Scripſi.
The money is in the coyning. Argentum cuditur.
Speak out thy words. Eloquere verba.
I care not for thee. Nihil moror te.
I will tarry abroad out of doors. Morabor ſub dio.
He is followed by many, overtaken by few. Multi ſequuntur eum, pauci aſſequuntur.
Winter was well-nigh ſpent, and the Spring drew on. Præcipitaverat hyems, & appetebat ver.
Thou art doing, but makeſt no riddance. Moves, ſed non promoves.

He cannot forbear doing miſchief, ——keep out of ill turns.
A maleficio non temperabit.

He is broken, bankrupt.
Decoxit.

Good luck have the buſineſs, God ſpeed it.
Vertat hæc res bene.

It waxeth night, ripe.
Veſperaſcit, matureſcit.

I am to go away.
Sum abiturus.

He is gone a hunting, to hunt.
Ivit venatum.

Thou haſt no cauſe to complain, ——of complaining.
Nullam habes cauſam querendi.

Very deſirous to go (of going) back.
Cupidiſſimus redeundi.

The greateſt allurement to ſin, is hope of ſparing.
Maxima peccandi illecebra, ſpes eſt impunitatis.

Take time to adviſe.
Sume diem ad deliberandum.

He roſe very early to ſtudy.
Surrexit admodum diluculo ad ſtudendum; ſtudendi gratiâ.

I have my Brother to intreat yet.
Reſtat mihi frater adhuc exorandus.

What doſt thou appoint me to do?
Quid mihi præſcribis faciendum?

I commend my Son to you to be taught.
Commendo tibi filium docendum.

I am come to intreat that I might.
Veni ut rogarem, ut liceret mihi.

I deſire thee to be (or that thou wouldſt be) gone.
Oro te, ut abeas.

I know not what to do.
Neſcio quid faciam.

Send thy man before to inquire.
Præmitte famulum, qui quærat.

Art thou a fit man to teach me?
Túne es idoneus, qui me doceas?

He gave me a Book to read, but not worth reading, not worthy to be read.
Dedit mihi librum legendum (quem legerem) at indignum qui legatur.

Here is a Pen-knife for you to make a pen withal.
Hem tibi ſcalpellum, quo pennam exacuas.

He was not come back in the morning, but now he is come back.
Manè non redierat, ſed nunc rediit.

Thou art come ſooner than I looked.
Veniſti celeriùs opinione.

I was gone abroad before thou wert up.
Prodieram foras priùs, quàm tu ſurrexeras.

I am undone, if he be gone away.
Si ille abiit, perii.

I am run out of breath.
Cucurri uſque dum fatiſcit ſpiritus.

The Apple is ripe.
Pomum maturuit.

You are a fool to believe——, for believing him.
Stultus es, qui huic credas.

You know what account I make of him.
Scis quanti eum faciam.

About

About (ready) to fall.
He deſerves to be praiſed.
He ſhould have been puniſhed.
The better Gameſter at Dice, the worſe man.
They differ but about one thing.
But for this one time.
There is not a day but he cometh to me.
You can reliſh nothing but roaſt meat.
What elſe is it to dance, but to play the fool?
He doth nothing but play.
I ſent no Letters but to you.

Nothing but what was well adviſed went from him.
I cannot but weep.

One by one.
From door to door.
Word for word.
Take heed thou doſt it not.
See thou come back.
Thou mayſt be gone.
He is above three miles off.

Why riſe you not? Riſe.
I am ſore afraid.
Without pains.
I am obliged, engaged to thee: in your debt.
You can do much with him.

At his Maſters beck.
Till broad day-light.
For this cauſe.
Thou mayſt be gone for all me.
Out of gun-ſhot.
It will not be for thy profit.
Conſidering his worth, he is not uſed with reſpect enough.
According to the ſudden accident, as the caſe ſtood.
Not amiſs.

Ruiturus.
Laudandus eſt.
Plectendus eſſet.
Aleator, quanto doctior, tanto nequior.
De unâ ſolùm re diffident.
Hâc tantùm vice.
Nullus eſt dies quin (quo non) ad me ventitet.
Nihil tibi ſapit, præter aſſa.

Quid aliud eſt ſaltare, niſi ineptire?
Nil niſi ludit.
Nullas dedi Literas, præterquam ad te.
Nil niſi conſideratum prodibat ex ejus ore.
Non poſſum non flere; quin fleam.
Sigillatim.
Oſtiatim.
Verbatim.
Cave ne feceris.
Fac redeas.
Licet abeas.
Amplius tria millia paſſuum abeſt.
Quin ſurgis?
Admodum timeo.
Citra pulverem.
Sum in tuo ære.

Tu multum, [plurimum] potes apud eum.
Ad domini nutum.
Ad clarum diem.
Hâc de cauſâ.
Licet abeas per me.
Extra telum, teli jactum.
Non erit ex re tua, in rem tuam.
Pro ejus dignitate minus honorificè tractatur.
E re natâ.

Non abs re.

He is on our ſide. A nobis ſtat.
He is one of Plato's *Sect.* Eſt à *Platone.*
He is the Kings Counſellor. Regi eſt à conſiliis.
He was thy Footman. Erat tibi à pedibus.
Before and behind. A fronte & à tergo.
At ſupper time. Super [inter] cœnam.
About ten talents. Ad decem talenta.
Word for word. Ad verbum; verbum de verbo.
At my houſe. Apud me, domi meæ.
In his right mind. Apud ſe, compos mentis.
It is to be found in Virgil. Habetur apud *Virgilium.*
In the days of yore, among our Anceſtors. Apud majores.

In jeſt; ſport. Per jocum; ludum.
For this preſent. In præſentia; in præſens; in præſenti.

Every hour. In horas.
One with another. Inter ſe.
What imployment is he fit for? Quas ad res aptus eſt?
Here's a pen for thee to write with. Hem tibi pennam quâ ſcribas.
This is the man I told you of. Hic eſt de quo locutus ſum tibi.
You ſhould have told me this before. Debuiſti prædicere.

Lay the burden upon me. Impone mihi hoc onus.
I will go preſently to the man. Illico adibo hominem.
He goes to bed ſupperleſs, without his ſupper. It cubitum incœnatus.

Shew thy ſelf a man. Præſta te virum.
He will prove a Scholar. Evadet doctus.
He is held an excellent Divine. Theologiæ peritiſſimus habetur.
He is reported to be (hath the report of) a ſpend-thrift. Audit Nepos.

I had rather go on foot, than on horſe-back. Mallem ire pedes, quàm eques.

He is ſick of a quartan (feaver.) Laborat quartanâ, ſc. febre.
To give him a Civick Crown. Donare civica, ſc. coronâ.
To pour on cold water. Frigidam ſuffundere, ſc. aquam.
To hold the firſt parts, to be the chief. Primas tenere, ſc. partes.

Which way? that way. Quâ? illâc, ſc. viâ.
At my charge. De meo, ſc. ære, vel ſumpt.
There is a thing that I would tell thee. Eſt quod tibi indicarem.

There are ſome that ſay ſo. Sunt qui affirmant.
There is a thing that troubles me. Eſt quod me malè habet.
There is no room for me to ſit. Non eſt ubi ſedeam.

You have cauſe to be glad.
We are moſt deſirous of thoſe things that are moſt hurtful to us.
I will not hinder you from ſtudying.
Nothing hindred you from writing.
Buſineſſes hindred me from writing.
What trade are you of?
Let your hook be always hanging.
They were two days journey off.
What's the matter?
You ſee what a kind of man he is.
If any matter of money remain.

I went not a wenching at that age, at thoſe years.
A poor deal of wine.
At this time of the day.
What ſickneſs is this?
So much money, ſo much credit.
This poor piece of a letter.
The way is much of the ſame length.
He hath juſt his Maſters conditions.
He is not able to pay.
They carry things fit to put out the fire.
He endureth cold the beſt of any man living.
I am the neareſt to you of any man.
Ask his advice about this.
I can eat Beef heartily.

I will take the ſame courſe that thou doſt.
I imitate } *thee.*
I envy }
No man underſtands me.
Cicero ſalutes you.
I ſhall beware of him that he hurt me not.
He is in a groſs errour.
You will be heartily glad.

Eſt quod gaudeas.
Quæ maximè nobis nocent, ea maximè appetimus.
Per me non ſtabit quo minùs ſtudeas.
Nihil obſtitit quo minùs ſcriberes.
Negotia me impedierunt quo minùs ſcriberem.
Quam artem factitas?
Semper tibi pendeat hamus.
Aberant bidui, ſc. viam.
Quid rei eſt?
Vides quid ſit hominis.
Si quid nummorum erit reliquum.
Ego iſtuc ætatis non amori operam dabam.
Minimum vini.
Hoc diei.
Quid hoc morbi eſt?
Quantum pecuniæ, tantum fidei.
Hoc literularum.
Tantundem viæ eſt.

Domini eſt ſimillimus.

Non eſt ſolvendo, *ſub.* idoneus.
Ea portant, quæ reſtinguendo igni forent, ſc. idonea.
Eſt omnium qui vivunt, algoris patientiſſimus.
Tibi me propior nemo eſt.
Conſule illum hoc.
Veſcor bubulâ lubentiſſimè, ſc. carne.
Eodem tecum utar conſilio.

Æmulor { te. / tibi.
Non inrelligor ulli.
Salvebis à *Cicerone*.
Cavebo ab illo ne mihi noceat.

Errorem erravit ſpiſſum.
Solidum gaudebis gaudium.

What pranks would he play?
This is a ſecret to us, we are ignorant of it.
He came to the relief of the Townſmen.
It caſts an ugly ſmell.
What hadſt thou to ſupper?
They know not the way.
It ſmells of Saffron.
I am ſorry for you.
I deny it.
The day will fail me.
You are ſure to be puniſht.
To die.
Hands off, forbear.
I wraſtle with, out of troubles.
I mind only this, this is all I mind.
To quicken his ſpeed, flight.
He is ſeven years old.
It is for { *Subjects to obey.* / *Kings to command.*
It came into my mind, head.
He ſtudies Phyſick.
There is room for you.
He minds Philoſophy.
Be ruled by me.
What troubles you?
I yield to thee.
Come into the houſe.
I was by when he preached,—preſent at the Sermon.
I had a mind, deſire.
I am not in fault.
He is convicted of theft.
To condemn to death.
He ſued him in an Action of Treſpaſs.
To accuſe of Treaſon.

He is accuſed of Bribery.

He accuſeth him of a crime.

He ſet fire on the houſe, the houſe on fire.
I bought this for you.

Quos ludos luderet?
Hoc nos latet.

Oppidanis ſuppetias venit.

Tetrum odorem ſpirat.
Quid cœnaſti?
Semitam non ſapiunt.
Olet crocum.
Doleo tuam vicem.
Eo inficias.
Deficiet me dies.
Pœna vos manet.
Mortem occumbere.
Abſtine manum.
Eluctor difficultates.
Studeo hoc unum, in hoc unum.
Celerare fugam.
Eſt annorum ſeptem.
Eſt { Subditi parere. / Regis imperare. } ſc. officium.
Venit mihi in mentem.
Studet Medicinæ.
Locus vacat tibi.
Vacat Philoſophiæ.
Auſculta mihi.
Quid tibi dolet?
Accedo tibi.
Succede ædibus.
Interfui concioni.

Inceſſit mihi cupiditas.
Vaco culpâ.
Tenetur furti.
Damnare capitis.
Egit injuriarum cum illo.

Læſæ majeſtatis arceſſere; inſimulare.
Poſtulatur de repetundis, ſc. pecuniis.
Arguit / Arceſſit } eum crimine.
Injecit ignem ædibus.

Hoc mercatus ſum tibi.

Set

Set pen to paper.
He deceived, couſened me, put a trick upon me.
He committed this to my truſt.
He forbad me his houſe, ——diſcharged me of his houſe.
I'le have nothing to do with your friendſhip; entertainment; gift, &c.
I will take a courſe, provide for thee.
I promiſe thee this.
Anſwer me this.
He will not let me have my Book.
I will put thee by all thy ſhifts.

He gave me a box on the ear.
Forgive me this fault.
Will you command me any ſervice?
I ſuppoſe they have no money.
I'le look to that.
Put him in mind of his duty.
We are warned of many things.
He kept theſe things from his father.
I intreat this of you.
They are asked their opinion.
Let me prevail with you.
He has his gown on.
Skilful in Greek.
Well skilled in Martial Diſcipline.
He ſtript him of his goods, of all.
Let him loſe, be made to go without his ſupper.
I have wip'd the old man of his money.
He is of, has a lowring look.
When he had ſpoken theſe words.
He is gone a hunting.
Your letting him do as he liſts, makes him grow every day worſe than other.
He is buſie a writing.
Leave off, leave your prating.
I ſet it a ſunning.
I am to write letters.

Imprime pennam chartæ.
Impoſuit mihi.

Credidit hoc meæ fidei.
Interdixit; prohibuit mihi domum.
Renuncio amicitiæ; hoſpitio; muneri, &c.

Proſpiciam; conſulam; cavebo tibi.
Hoc tibi recipio.
Hoc mihi reſponde.
Prohibet mihi librum.
Præcludam tibi omnia ſubterfugia.
Impegit mihi colaphum.
Condona mihi hoc delictum.
Ecquid mihi imperabis?
Suſpicor nihil argenti eſſe illis.
Hoc mihi curæ erit.
Admone illum officii.
Multa admonemur.
Hæc patrem celavit.

Te hoc obſecro.
Rogantur ſententiam.
Sine te exorem.
Induitur togam.
Literas Græcas eruditus.
Edoctus belli artes.
Exuit eum bonis.
Multetur cœna.

Emunxi argento ſenem.

Fronte eſt caperatâ.
His verbis dictis.
Abiit venatum.
Uſq; adeò permittis eum quidvis pro libitu facere, ut quotidie fiat ſeipſo deterior.
Occupatus eſt ſcribendo.
Deſiſte garriendo.
Poſui ad inſolandum.
Scribendæ ſunt mihi literæ.

I muſt write out this Book.
In writing letters.

I have no leiſure to write a letter.

I am not at leiſure.
Thou mayſt for all me.
Beſides my purpoſe.
What will become of me?
To ſwear by Jove.
A child of that age.
Many things of like ſort.
The laſt day of January.
The third day of January.
Hard by.
In ſafety.
In readineſs.
By Sea and Land.
He is of no account with us.
Be of good courage.
A man of great age.
Lame of his feet.
Red-haired.
On that condition.
For thy ſake.
Of a good age.
He is ſick of a diſeaſe; feaver; want.
I ſalute you, greet you well.
In confidence of your courteſie.
He is not able to ſpeak for grief.
Of the ſame mould, temper.
To be angry for nothing.
She has had a child by Pamphilus.
You ſhall not buy it but at a dear rate.
You ask too much for your wares.
You offer a penny for it.
To ſet at nought.
How doſt thou prize this houſe?
Not under ten pounds.

It is not worth ſo much.
One eye-witneſs is worth a thouſand ear-witneſſes.

Exſcribendus eſt mihi hic liber.
In ſcriben. { do literas. / dis literis.
Non eſt mihi otium ſcribendæ epiſtolæ. / di epiſtolam.
Non vacat mihi.
Licet tibi per me.
Alienum inſtitutis meis.
Quid mihi [de me] fiet?
Jovem jurare (per.
Puer id ætatis (ad.
Id genus multa (ſecundum.
Pridie calendas *Februarii* (ante.
Tertio nonas *Januarii* (ante.
In proximo. (loco.
In tuto. (loco.
In promptu.
Terrâ marique.
Nullo eſt numero apud nos.
Bono ſis animo.
Homo provectâ ætate.
Claudus pedibus.
Crine ruber.
Eâ lege (ſub.
Tuâ causâ (pro.
Grandis natu.
Laborat morbo; febri; penuriâ.
Impertio te ſalute.
Fretus tuâ humanitate.
Præ mœrore fari nequit.
De eâdem fideliâ.
De nihilo iraſci.
Peperit è *Pamphilo*.
Non parabis niſi immenſo pretio.
Liceris nimio merces.
Licitaris denario.
Pro nihilo putare, ducere.
Quanti indicas has ædes?
Non minoris quàm decem minis.
Non eſt tanti.
Pluris oculatus teſtis unus, quàm mille auriti.

I care not a ſtraw for thee. Non pili te facio.
I take it in good part. Boni conſulo.
I weigh it not thus much. Hujus non pendo.
It weigheth three drams. Pendet tres drachmas.
Go not a nails breadth from the truth. Ne tranſverſum unguem diſcedas à recto.
Two days journey off. Abeſt bidui iter.
Leſs by the half. Dimidio minor.
A City unguarded. Urbs præſidio nuda.
To ſtand to the bargain. Stare pactis.
To rely upon vertue. Virtute niti.
Well born. Honeſto loco natus.
Come of a great houſe. Genere clariſſimo [ſplendidâ familiâ] ortus.
I am a Louth *man, but my Anceſtors were of* York-ſhire. Sum *Ludenſis*, at oriundus ex agro *Eboracenſi*.
He went out at three a clock. Prodiit tertiâ horâ.
Within this two days we ſhall know. Biduo; intra biduum ſciemus.

In ſleep time. Per quietem.
You ſleep till broad day. Stertis ad multum diem.
For this three years full. Per totum triennium.
By night. De nocte.
For a year; —month. In annum; —menſem.
For many years paſt. Multis retro annis.
At this time of the night. Hoc noctis.
Till late at night. Ad multam noctem.
You ſleep till fair day. Ad clarum diem dormis.
Eight days hence. Ad octavum hinc diem.
For the ſpace of ſome years. Aliquot per annos.
Day after day. Diem ex die.
Six years ago, ſince. Ante ſex annos; ſex ab hinc annis.

Since when. Since then. Ex quo. Ex illo.
It is a twelve-month ſince I ſaw him. Annus eſt, ex quo eum vidi; quod eum non vidi.
I being his Author, ſetter on. Me authore.
In Ireland. In *Hibernia*.
At Dublin; Carthage; Venice. *Dublinii*; *Carthagine*; *Venetiis*.
He came from about Rome, *from the parts about* Rome. Venit à *Româ*.

Theſe things were done before or near Ilerda. Hæc ad *Ilerdam* geruntur.

He departed from before Mutina. Diſceſſit à *Mutinâ*.
I ſit next Pompey. Proximè *Pompeium* ſedeo.

I ſhall riſe, be up, get out of bed ſooner than I was wont.	Surgam maturiùs ſolito.
Above half a mile.	Amplius quingentis paſſibus.
What do you touching of us?	Quid tibi nos eſt tactio?
To gape after an inheritance.	Inhiare hæreditatem.
I had a deſire, mind.	Inceſſit me cupido.
I know not which way to take.	Neſcio quam viam inſiſtam.
I will give over my enterpriſe.	Deſiſtam incœpto.
I forbear to ſpeak of many things.	Pluribus ſuperſedeo.
Born to glory.	Natus gloriæ; ad gloriam.
He ſpake not a word of thee.	De te nihil meminit.
He came to that height of pride.	Eo inſolentiæ proceſſit.
As far as it is poſſible to be done.	Quoad ejus fieri poteſt.

A Collection of Phraſes out of Dr. *Godwins* Roman *Antiquities.* Lib. 1.

Sect. 1. Ch. 1.

TO build a new Town.	URbem novam condere.
To ſet out where the Walls of a Town ſhould be.	Urbem } deſignare aratro; ſul- Mœnia } co.
To raze, or demoliſh a Town, or City.	Imprimere muris hoſtile aratrum.
Chap. 2. *we flie to thee as to our only refuge.*	Ad te tanquam ad aſylum, aram confugimus.
C. 10. *To keep the Aſſiſes.*	Forum agere.
To appoint where Aſſiſes ſhall be kept.	Forum indicere.
C. 15. *Huge Books, or Books of Ivory.*	Libri Elephantini.
C. 17. *An unconſtant, unſetled mind.*	Ingenium volaticum, deſultorium.
Led, ſpare, vaulting horſes.	Equi deſultorii.
He is to be barred from giving his voice.	De ponte dejiciendus eſt.
C. 18. *From the ſtart to the ſtaff; beginning to the ending.*	A carceribus ad metam; ab ovo, ad mala.
C. 19. *An ignoble Perſon; one of the Hinds.*	Inter cuneos reſidet.
To go into the Field; enter the Liſts.	In arenam deſcendere.
C. 20. *To appoint where a Temple ſhould be built.*	Effari Templum; ſiſtere fanum.

To

To fight for God and our Country Lib. 1. Sect. 2.	Pro aris & focis certare.
Chap. 1. *Unfeignedly; like a Roman; from the heart.*	More Romano; i. e. ex animo.
Free Denisons of Rome *made such by cooptation.*	Civitate donati.
C. 2. *Curſed to Hell.*	Diis inferis devoti.
Senators of Rome.	Patres conſcripti.
Senators of the Lower Houſe; Members of the Houſe of Commons.	Senatores minorum gentium.
C. 3. *A Troop-horſe; a horſe for the Service of the War.*	Equus publicus; militaris.
Men of no account; inferior; baſe perſons.	Ignota capita; ſine nomine turba. *Poet.*
C. 4. *An upſtart Citizen.*	Novus & reptitius civis. *Sal.*
A Gentleman; a Knight, of the firſt head.	Novus homo.
C. 6. *Free-born Citizens.*	Cives originarii; ingenui.
Free-made Citizens.	Liberti; libertini; Civitate donati.
To make one free; to ſet at liberty.	E manu aliquem emittere; ad pileum vocare; vindictâ liberare.
I have a mind to give him his freedom.	Hunc liberum eſſe volo.
He is a { *Free* / *Noble* } *man.*	Habet tria nomina.
To pay ones debt.	Nomina liberare.
To run into debt.	Nomina facere.
To ſue for payment.	Nomina exigere.

LIB. II.

Sect. 1. Ch. 1.	
A good cudgelling.	Argumentum bacillinum.
Gods of the greater Nations.	Dii majorum Gentium; nobiles; conſentes.
Gods of the leſſer Nations.	Dii minorum Gentium; Dii indigetes; Semidei.
Country Gods, Tutelar Gods.	Dii patrii, Dii tutelares.
Indifferent, neuter, common Gods.	Dii communes.
The good Angel.	Bonus Genius.
The evil Angel.	Malus Genius.
The Womens Guardian Angels.	Junones.
It was done againſt the pleaſure of God.	Diis iratis factum. *Plaut.*

No man without his misfortune.
He makes much of himself; he pampers his kite, carcaſs.
A very pinch-belly, a thief to his own belly, carcaſs.
The Grace-cup.
In a little Cottage.
A man that hath no certain abiding place, ſetled dwelling.
A very Eat-all; one that plays the glutton [greedy gut] leaves not ſo much as manners in the diſh.

Sect. 2.

Ch. 2. *It is ſeed-time.*
He makes a Feaſt without wine.
Ch. 6. *with good luck, luckily.*
With ill luck.
To begin a thing.
It thundred luckily, we ſhall have good ſucceſs, ſpeed well.
Protectors of the Commons.
C. 9. *He gave over being Prieſt; left his Prieſthood.*
C. 10. *The Battel was doubtful; fought with various ſucceſs; now one ſide had the better, now the other.*
By ones own ſtrength.
Dainty cheer; fare.
C. 11. *He hath ſent him a challenge; challenged him into the field.*
A denunciation of war.
C. 12. *It is undoubtedly true; true as Goſpel.*
An hard task.

C. 13. *One thief accuſeth another; the pot calls the pan burnt-arſe.*
C. 14. *A rude fellow; a lewd perſon; a very raſcal.* Cybeles *jugler.*

Quiſque ſuos patimur manes.
Genio indulget.

Genium defraudat.

Poculum boni genii.
Parvo ſub lare. *Hor.*
Homo incerti laris.

Lari ſacrificat.

Credenda *Ceres* arvis, *Ov.*
Cereri ſacrificat.
Bonis avibus; auſpiciis; ave ſiniſtrâ; cornice ſiniſtrâ.
Malis avibus.
Auſpicari rem.
Intonuit lævum.

Tribuni plebis.
Sacerdotio abibat.

Vario *Marte* pugnatum eſt.

Proprio *Marte.*
Saliares dapes.
Arietem emiſit.

Clarigatio.
Sibyllæ folium eſt.

Laborioſius eſt quàm *Sibyllæ* folia colligere.
Clodius accuſat mœchos.

Circulator *Cybelïus.*

C. 15.

C. 15. *A coſtly ſupper; a ſumptuous feaſt; a feaſt for an Abbot; a commencement-ſupper; an inſtallation-ſupper; Exceedings.*
C. 19. *To enterpriſe a thing without due reverence, or preparation.*
Muſt I be whipt for your faults? —ſuffer for your rogueries?
Attend, mind what you are about.
To take a light taſte of a thing.
The firſt offerings.
He grows in grace.
To ſlay the ſacrifice.

Shall I fall to? Muſt I to my work?
To ſatisfie by ſacrifice; or, To pay the ſacrifice.
He cannot ſtay till grace be ſaid.
C. 20. *Witneſſes to a contract.*
To marry a wife.
The marriage-bed.
Where you are Lord I am Lady; where you are Jack I am Gill.
A wedding, and no wedding.
I will have nothing to do—— ——no dealing with you.
Take your things and be gone; packing.
Cæſar *hath divorced* Pompeia.
He hath caſt off all goodneſs.
To cloſe the eyes.
C. 21. *It is paſt help, —cure; all's in vain; to no purpoſe; there is no hope; he is given up for gone.*
You have your leave to be gone; you may be packing; depart.
To make a Funeral Sermon, —Oration for one.
It is time now, now's the time.
A burial, and no burial.
An old carle; a down man; one that hath one ſoot already in the grave.

Cœna pontificia; aditialis.

Accedere ad rem illotis { manibus. pedibus.
Meum tergum ſtultitiæ tuæ ſubdes ſuccidaneum?
Hoc age.
Libare.
Prima libamina.
Mactus eſt virtute.
Hoſtire victimam; mactare; ferire hoſtiam.
Agon'?

Litare.

Sacra haud immolata devorat.
Signatores.
Ducere uxorem.
Genialis lectus.
Ubi tu *Cajus*, ibi ego *Caja*: i.e. ut tu dominus, ita ego domina.
Nuptiæ innuptæ.
Conditione tuâ non utar.

Res tuas tibi habeto; agito.

Cæſar Pompeiæ nuncium remiſit.
Virtuti nuncium remiſit.
Comprimere oculos.
Conclamatum eſt.

Ilicet.

Defunctum pro roſtris laudare.

Jam tempus eſt.
Sepultura inſepulta.
Silicernium.

Sect. 3.

C. 1. *The fourth day of* April.
Holy-day cloaths.
C. 2. *It is a ſecret, no body knows the reaſon of it.*
C. 5. *Worſe ſcared than hurt; better than we looked for; not ſo ill as we feared; all will be well; the old Father dances.*
C. 6. *Having a mind to make bets, —to lay wagers.*
He has loſt both his labour and coſt.
To fight at whorlebats.
C. 7. *He was hummed extraordinarily, highly applauded for his verſes; —ſermon; cried up mightily.*
C. 9. *To make a ſolemn vow unto God.*
To make a vow to build a Church; inſtitute a Game.
To bind ones ſelf to make good his vow.
Liable no make good his vow.
Bound to performance of his vow.
To have ones deſire accompliſhed.
C. 10. *Hirelings, perſons hired to play prizes.*
A flouriſh before the fight.
It is one thing to flouriſh, another to fight.
Weapons for { *ſhow.* / *fight.*
To fight at ſharps, with naked weapons.
To change ones poſture, purpoſe; go back with his word.
He is put into a maze; driven to change his mind; put to a puzzle.
A ribanded garland; a conqueſt after a combat.
He has won many a prize.
Diſcharged from his pains.
He hath a mind to put a trick upon you.

Pridie nonas *Aprilis.*
Purpura *Megalenſis.*
Eſt inter arcana *Cereris.*

Salva res eſt, ſaltat ſenex.

Sponſionibus concitatus.

Operam & oleum perdidit; opera & impenſa periit.
Bellare ceſtu.
Fregit ſubſellia verſu; oratione, clamatum rectè; bene; pulchrè; Grande ſophos.

Vota nuncupare; facere.

Vovere templum; ludos.

Signare votum.

Voti reus.
Damnatus voti; voto.
Damnari voti; voto.
Auctorati.

Præludium.
Aliud eſt ventilare; aliud pugnare.
Luſoria; exercitatoria tela.
Decretoria; pugnatoria arma.
Dimicare ad certum; verſis armis pugnare.
Cedere; demigrare de gradu.

De mentis ſtatu dejicitur; deturbatur.

Palma leminiſcata.

Plurimarum palmarum homo.
Rude donatus.
Tragulam in te injicere adornat. *Plaut.*

To

To play at blind-mans buffet; to wink and ſtrike.
He gives him a challenge,—dares him to fight.
C. 11. *The end of a mans life.*
A man fit for all parts,—good at any thing.
Recreatory diverſions.
A loſty ſtyle.
C. 13. *He hath broken the league of hoſpitality.*
Size ace; a gooſe to a chicken; a dwarff to a giant; a very unequal compariſon.
A winning caſt; a luckie caſt.

A loſing caſt; dog-chance; an unluckie throw.
I will put all to the hazard; win the horſe or loſe the ſaddle; win all or loſe all.
To play at ball.
To whip a top.
To play at even or odd.

To leave boys play; to be paſt a child.
Croſs or pile.
C. 14. *He did invite me very earneſtly; —was very earneſt with me to come.*
Unbidden gueſts.
He needed but ſmall invitation.

From the beginning to the ending.
The firſt meſs at the Feaſt.
The laſt meſs at the Feaſt.
The prime chief diſh; the moſt ſubſtantial diſh.
A { *Light Supper.* / *Dole in meat or money.*
A well furniſhed table; —great varieties; a plentiful Supper; great chear.
A thin Supper; ſlender Table; ſmall chear; ſcanty Proviſions.

Andabatarum more pugnare.

Minimo provocat.

Vitæ humanæ Cataſtrophe.
Omnium ſcenarum homo.

Diludia.
Sophocleus cothurnus.
Teſſeram hoſpitii confregit.

Κῶος πρὸς χῖον · *Cous* ad chium.

Jactus pronus; plenus; ſenio; *Venus*; *Cous*.
Jactus ſupinus; inanis; canis; canicula; chius.
Aut ter ſex, aut tres teſſeræ.

Datatim ludere.
Buxum torquere flagello.
Ludere par impar; par ſit numerus dicere, an impar.
Nuces relinquere.

Vel capitâ, vel navim.
Penulam mihi ſcidit.

Muſcæ; umbræ.
Illius ego vix tetigi penulam, tamen remanſit.
Ab ovo ad mala.
Procœmium cœnæ.
Epilogus cœnæ.
Caput cœnæ; fundus & fundamentum cœnæ.

Sportula.
Cœna recta; dubia.

Cœna ambulatoria.

LIB. III.

Sect. 1.

Chap. 1. *At latter Lammas; at Nevermaſs.*	Ad Calendas *Græcas.*
The fifth of January.	Nonæ *Januariæ, Januarii.*
The fourth of January.	Pridie nonarum *or* nonas *Jan.*
The thirteenth day of January.	Idus *Januarii.*
The twelfth day of January.	Pridie Iduum [vel Idus] *Januarii.*
The firſt day of January.	Kalendæ *Januariæ.*
The laſt day of December.	Pridie Calend. *Jan.*
Fortunate days.	Dies albi.
Unfortunate days.	Diei atri; poſtriduani; *Ægyptiaci*; nefaſti.
Marked for a black ſheep.	Nigro carbone notatus.
To plant in an unluckie hour.	Nefaſto quid ponere die.
Towards midnight.	Ad mediam noctem.
A little after midnight.	De media nocte.
Holy days.	Dies feſti; feriati; feriæ.
Working days.	Dies profeſti.
Half Holy days.	Dies intercifi.
A Law-day.	Dies comitialis.
Whole Court or Leet / *Half Court* / *Non Leet* } *days.*	Dies { Faſti. / ex parte Faſti. / nefaſti.
A Common Barreter, wrangling fellow.	Homo comitialis.
C. 2. *An Old man.*	Depontanus.
Old men above ſixty years of age have a Writ of Eaſe given them.	Sexagenarii de ponte dejiciendi.
A Will made in an Aſſembly of Pontifies.	Teſtamentum calatis comitiis.
By word of mouth.	Vivâ voce.
Be it as you deſire.	Uti rogas.
I am for the old way; love no changing; like no innovations.	Antiquum volo; antiquo.
He had not ſeven voices for him.	Suffragiorum puncta non tulit ſeptem.
He had not a man againſt him; every body ſtood for him.	Omne tulit punctum.
Poſſeſſion of goods according to the Will of the Teſtator.	Secundum tabulas bonorum poſſeſſio.

Poſſeſſion

Poſſeſſion of goods againſt the Will of the Teſtator.
Contra tabulas bonorum poſſeſſio.

A chief heir; heir to the main inheritance.
Hæres primæ ceræ; in primo gradu inſtitutus; ex toto aſſe.

The next heir, to ſucceed after the death of the firſt.
Hæres ſecundus.

A Legatee, one that hath a legacy given him.
Hæres eſt in imâ cerâ; legatarius.

Confuſed notes, foul papers.
Adverſaria.

Books of Accompt; Count-books.
Tabulæ accepti & expenſi.

Statute-books; or Books of Record.
Tabulæ publicæ.

Letters of Protection, or diſcharge from paying of debts.
Tabulæ novæ.

Bills of Sale.
Tabulæ auctionariæ.

A letter. A Letter-carrier.
Tabellæ. Tabellarius.

A leaden plate to write upon.
Charta plumbea.

We opened the letter; broke up the ſeal.
Linum incidimus.

To turn Cat in the pan; ſay and unſay; recant what he hath ſaid.
Stylum invertere.

He knew his own hand and ſeal.
Cognovit manum & ſignum ſuum.

To read over a Book.
Evolvere librum.

The roller, or ſtaff on which a Book was rolled.
Umbilicus.

To bring to an end.
Ad umbilicum ducere.

To ſhake the lots together; to make even lots.
Æquare ſortes.

The good fortune to have the voices of the Prerogative Tribe.
Omen prærogativum.

To publiſh a Law to be made before the making of it.
Promulgare legem.

To move that a Law be made.
Rogare legem.

To record a Law.
Ferre legem.

To proclaim or publiſh a Law after it be made.
Figere legem; tabulam.

To cancel a Law.
Refigere legem.

The falling-ſickneſs.
Morbus comitialis.

To forbid the proceedings.
Obnunciare; intercedere.

C. 4. *Authors of beſt Account, Claſſical Authors.*
Claſſici ſcriptores.

Men of the firſt rank; Claſſick men.
Claſſici.

Under value.
Infra claſſem.

Men reckoned by the Poll; that paid little or nothing toward Subſidies.	Capite cenſi.
A Suitor for an Office.	Candidatus.
Men of ſmall means.	Tenuis cenſûs homines.
Men good for nothing but to get children.	Proletarii, ſc. homines.
To ſound the { *Alarm.* / *Retreat.*	Claſſicum } canere. / Receptui }
C. 6. *To ſue for an Office.*	Ambire magiſtratum.
To enter into an Office.	Inire magiſtratum.
To depart out of an Office.	Abire magiſtratu.
To have as many voices as the Law doth require.	Conficere legitima ſuffragia.
To have the moſt voices, though not ſo many as the Law requireth.	Explere ſuffragia.
C. 7. *He is ready; in a readineſs.*	Altè præcinctus eſt.
A looſe Woman, lewd Strumpet.	Mulier togata.
To go to their Caſſocks; buckle for War; make ready for battel.	Ad ſaga ire; ad certamen ſe accingere.
Peace is to be preferred before War; Times of Peace.	Cedunt ſaga, arma togæ.
He is paſt a Stripling, grown up to years of diſcretion.	Exceſſit ex ephebis.
He is paſt a Child, grown to a mans eſtate.	Virilem togam ſumpſit.
A Suitor for an Office; a Citizen of better than ordinary repute.	Candidatus.
A young Student of Oratory.	Eloquentiæ Candidatus.
To change his apparel, put on mourning weeds.	Mutare veſtem.
A mourner; one that hath put himſelf into mourning.	Atratus.
An arraigned perſon.	Sordidatus.
His Majeſties principal Secretary.	Candidatus Principis, Quæſtor candidatus.
Childhood.	Ætas prætexta.
An embroidered Gown.	Toga picta; palmata; triumphalis.
C. 8. *Near is my ſhirt, but nearer my skin.*	Tunica pallio propior eſt.
He hath loſt his money; purſe.	Zonam perdidit.
To arm himſelf.	Arma induere.
To deflour a Virgin.	Zonam ſolvere.

Lib. 3. Sect. 2.

Chap. 2. *To diſcharge one of his Office; Dignity.*
To give place; yield unto; ſtrike ſail to.
C. 3. *The Decree of the Senate.*
To propound a matter to the Senate.
I am fully perſwaded of his opinion; ſide with him; am of his ſide.
He was favourably heard in the Senate.
He came off well with the Senate; was acquitted by the Senate.
The Senate neglected, condemned him.
To determine by voices; by polling.

To ſtrain, or } *a mans*
ſeize on } *goods.*

C. 4. *The Conſul* [*Mayor*] *Elect.*
He was appointed to be Flamen Dialis *the next year.*
Men that have been Conſuls.
C. 5. *The Authority of Magiſtrates to inquire into and reform manners.*
Cenſor-like to chide, or rebuke.
To depoſe a Senator.
To degrade; pull one down a peg; put into a lower Tribe.
A degrading of one.
Five, ten, fifteen years ſpace.
To purge, to muſter an Army.
C. 6. *To grant out a Writ or Action againſt a man.*
To condemn to death.
To paſs judgment on one.
To ſee and allow the delivery of the thing, or perſon whereon judgment is paſſed.
Moſt bounden ſervants.
To ſell a mans life; to take money to kill one.

Faſces abrogare.

Faſces ſubmittere alicui.

Senatûsconſultum. S. C.
Referre ad Senatum.
In illius ſententiam iturus ſum; manibus pedibúſque diſceſſurus ſum.
Senatus ei dabatur.

Stetit in Senatu.

Jacuit in Senatu.

Per ſingulorum ſententias exquiſitas decernere.

Cædere, Concidere, Capere, Auferre } pignora.

Ad conſulatum deſignatus.
Flamen Dialis deſignatus eſt Conſulibus ſequentibus.
Viri conſulares.
Virgula cenſoria.

Virgulâ Cenſoriâ notare.
Senatu movere.
Tribu movere.

Capitis diminutio.
Luſtrum; duo, tria luſtra.
Condere luſtrum.
Dare actionem.

Capite damnare.
Dicere jus.
Rem; hominem addicere.

Servi addicti.
Addicere ſanguinem alicujus.

C. 9.

C. 9. *Within an hundred miles.* — Intra centeſimum Lapidem.
C. 16. *An excommunicate perſon.* — Homo ſacer.
C. 22. *To take Provinces by agreement.* — Comparare Provincias.
Protectors of the Commons. — Tribuni plebis.
To have the Provinces by lot. — Sortiri Provincias.

Lib. 3. Sect. 3.

Chap. 1. *To fine one a ſheep.* — Alicui ovem unum mulctam dicere.
C. 2. *Puniſhment by loſs of life.* — Ultimum ſupplicium.
Disfranchiſement. — Capitis diminutio.
To baniſh one out of the City. — Alicui aqua & igni interdicere; hominem proſcribere.
To ſet a mans goods to ſale. — Bona alicujus proſcribere.
C. 3. *Puniſhment by whipping to death under a Croſs.* — Supplicium more majorum.
C. 4. *To prick, egg a man on.* — Stimulo fodere.
To kick againſt the pricks. — Stimulos pugnis cædere.
A hangmanly ſieve. — Carnificium cribrum.
C. 5. *Little Eaſe; the Cage.* — Mala manſio.
C. 8. *Saved from the Gallows.* — De Lapide empti; à furca redempti.
To be condemned to the Fencing-School. — Damnari in gladium; in ludum.
To be condemned to fight for his life with beaſts. — Damnari ad beſtias.
C. 9. *To be condemned to the drawing of water.* — In Antliam damnari.
I will ſend you to Bridewel; to the Houſe of Correction. — In piſtrinum te dedam.
He hath ſhackles about his legs. — Pedes habet annulatos.
To be condemned to the Mines. — Damnari in metallum, in opus metalli.
A branded Slave; a ſtigmatized Rogue; a Rogue that is burnt in the hand, brow, or ſhoulder. — Nebulo ſtigmaticus; literatus; ergaſtulum inſcriptum.

Lib. 3. Sect. 4.

Chap. 1. *To cite one into the Court.* — In jus vocare.
To adminiſter juſtice publickly, ſitting on the Bench; to keep a publick Seſſions. — Agere pro tribunali.
To adminiſter juſtice privately, ſtanding on the ground; to hold a private Seſſions. — Agere de plano.
C. 2. *To judge in perſon.* — Judicare.

To judge by proxie.	Judicium dare.
They are acquitted.	Secundum eos lis datur.
To be caſt in ones Suit.	Lite, cauſâ cadere.
C. 4. *Condemned unheard, without being heard ſpeak for himſelf.*	Indictâ cauſâ damnatus.
To work under-hand, conſpire againſt one.	Coire.
To circumvent, deceive, cheat, oppreſs with falſe judgment procured by bribery or confederacy.	Circumvenire; circumſcribere.
Citizens by { *birth.* / *donation.*	Cives { Nati. / Adſcripti, civitate donati.
To render ones name to the Magiſtrate.	Apud Prætorem profiteri; nomen profiteri.
C. 5. *To make a ſpeech to the people.*	Agere ad populum.
To aſſemble the people to give their voices.	Agere cum populo.
C. 9. *To be in chief command, Commander in chief in the Army.*	Eſſe cum imperio.
Crown money.	Aurum coronarium.
To be ſet to ſale by the Crier; expoſed to publick ſale.	Publico præconi; haſtæ ſubjici.
To buy of one that hath no power, no right [nothing to do] to ſell.	A malo auctore emere.
An Auction; publick Sale to them that will give moſt.	Auctio; haſta.
The ſale of Cæſar's *goods.*	Haſta *Cæſaris.*
Goods ſet at ſale.	Bona ſuſpenſa.
To put in bands to anſwer.	Deiicere libellos.
To ſhew he hath a mind to buy.	Digitum tollere.
C. 12. *A Pig with a pudding in the belly.*	Porcellus *Trojanus.*
C. 14. *Let him be begged for a fool.*	Ad agnatos & gentiles deducendus eſt.
C. 15. *He is made ſole heir.*	Hæres in totum aſſem inſtitutus eſt.
An heir in truſt.	Hæres fiduciarius; imaginarius.
An heir to one quarter of the goods.	Hæres ex quadrante.
One that had the threeſcore and twelfth part.	Sextula aſperſus.

An heir to ſome part of the whole.	Hæres ex toto aſſe.
C. 17. *To forge a crime never committed.*	Calumniari.
To { enter an Action. / chuſe Judges by lot.	Dicam { ſcribere. / ſortiri.
To play the falſe Proctor.	Prævaricari.
To deſiſt in his accuſation, let his ſuit fall.	Tergiverſari.
A mortgaging of land to pay money.	Mancipatio fiduciaria.
To receive a mortgage, take land for ſecurity.	Accipere fiduciam.
Coyned money.	Æs ſignatum.
Bullion.	Æs grave.
To pay; repay.	Pendo; rependo.
C. 19. *To plead ſickneſs for non-appearance.*	Morbum excuſare.
C. 20. *To put money to uſe.*	Pecuniam occupare; fœnerari; fœnori dare; collocare.
To produce witneſſes on both ſides.	Litem conteſtari.
To put in ſureties.	Satisdationes facere.
To pay his Fine.	Judicatum ſolvere.
To ſtand to the Verdict of the Court.	Rem ratam habere.
To make an end—, an agreement betwixt themſelves.	Lites redimere; pactionem facere.
To tax the coſts and charges of the ſuit.	Litem æſtimare.
A citation of one into the Court.	In jus vocatio.
To accuſe one of a crime.	Poſtulare aliquem de crimine.
To enter an action againſt one.	Alicui actionem; litem intendere; diem dicere.
To implead one, or complain of him.	Nomen deferre alicujus.
To demand bail, ſureties for appearance.	Vadari reum.
To enter into Bond for appearance.	Promittere vadimonium.
Sentence is put off till the third day.	Lis comperendinatur.
To ſwear he doth not accuſe falſly, or maliciouſly.	Calumniam jurare; dejurare; in litem jurare.
An execution to ſeize on ones goods.	Edictum peremptorium.
He made his appearance in the Court.	Se ſtetit.
We muſt have longer time to conſider.	Amplius cognoſcendum.

The

The Prisoner is reprieved.	Reus ampliatur.
To sit upon Life and Death on a man.	De Capite alicujus quærere.
C. 21. *To argue the case* pro *and* con, *to fight hand to hand.*	Manum ; manu conserere.
To offer to wager a suit in Law with one.	Sponsione ; sacramento provocare ; rogare ; quærere ; stipulari.
To wager a suit in Law with one.	Contendere ex provocatione ; sacramento ; restipulari.
To bind himself to pay what shall be adjudged.	Satisdare judicatum solvi.
To bind himself to stand to the judgment of the Court.	Satisdare rem ratam habere.

LIB. IV.

Chap. 1. *To take a solemn Oath.*	Jurare *Jovem* lapidem ; per *Jovem* lapidem.
To serve under a Captain in War.	Mereri sub duce.
An old Souldier that is discharged of his service.	Miles emeritus.
He hath served out his time in the Wars.	Stipendia confecit.
To sound a Call.	Classicum canere.
To joyn Battel.	Conferre signa ; collatis signis pugnare.
To make a great shout for Battel.	Barritum tollere.
To clash or rustle with their Armor.	Arma concutere.
To give a great shout in token the Souldiers should truss up their bag and baggage.	Conclamare vasa.
Readily.	Colligatis vasis ; paratè ; expeditè.
To be in a readiness continually.	In procinctu stare ; vivere.
C. 2. *A fresh-water Souldier.*	Tyro.
The initiation into any Art, Science, War.	Tyrocinium.
An old beaten Souldier.	Veteranus.
To leap, skip, run from one thing to another.	Agere velitatim.
I will save one, keep as far out of danger as I can.	Ego ero post principia.
It is come to the last push.	Ad Triarios ventum est.

C. 3.

C. 3. *His great friend hath forſaken him.*	Vallus vitem decepit.
To aſſail by covert ways.	Cuniculis oppugnare.
To aſſault by open force.	Machinis oppugnare.
C. 4. *Thou haſt undertaken a hard task.*	Provinciam cepiſti duram.
To caſt account with the pen.	Scribendo conficere rationes.
C. 5. *The caſhiering of a Souldier.*	Ignominioſa dimiſſio.
The ſtopping of a Souldiers pay.	Fraudatio ſtipendii.
He hath loſt his pay.	Ære dirutus eſt.
A forcing of a Souldier to give up his Spear.	Cenſio haſtaria.
He is honoured with a Spear without a head.	Haſtâ purâ donatus eſt.
The puniſhing of the tenth man in a Legion.	Decimatio legionis.
He deſerves a good cudgelling.	Fuſtuarium meretur.
To be cudgelled.	Fuſte cædi.
To be ſcourged with rods.	Virgis cædi.
C. 6. *To yield the victory, to give one the better of it.*	Herbam dare.
Royal Spoils.	Opima ſpolia.

This for the firſt ſtoring of the Learners Head and Memory with Phraſes. Then for the ſecond, the Teaching him how to uſe them. This is eaſily ſhewn him, by but compoſing three or four Engliſhes (Epiſtles or the like) of ſome pretty length, all, or moſt, of words capable of amplification by Periphraſes, and cauſing the Scholar firſt to tranſlate them according to the Verbal, and then out of his memory, and by the help of his Phraſe-books, according to the Periphraſtical way of Tranſlating. This may be an Example.

Loving Friend,

It is commonly reported, that you are ſick. Truly I am very ſorry for that. But I am much more ſorry, that you got your ſickneſs (for that they ſay too) by drinking too much. I earneſtly deſire you, firſt to repent of your having been drunk, and then to ſeek to recover your health. And if it pleaſe God, that you ever be well again, then have a care to live healthfully and ſoberly for time to come. This will be very pleaſing to all your friends, and eſpecially to

Your very Loving Friend,

T. A.

Ægrotare te, Amice, vulgò dictum eſt. Eâ profectò re multùm doleo. Atqui hanc te (quod item ferunt) ægritudinem largiùs bibendo contraxiſſe, id verò mihi multò magis dolet. Vehementer te oro, primùm ut ebrietatis te tuæ pœniteat, deinde utì des operam, quo convaleſcas. Quod ſi Deo erit viſum, ut aliquando è morbo revaleas, id tibi curæ ſit, cùm ut ſanus, tum ut ſobriùs deinceps vivas: Hoc tuis omnibus valde erit gratum, inprimis autem

Tui Studioſiſſimo,

T. A.

Valetudine te iniquâ, Amice præchariſſime, tentari, in ore omnium verſatur. Ea ſanè res graviſſimo me dolore afficit. Quod autem nimiùm indulgendo poculis (nam id quoque omnium ſermone percrebuit) iſtum in morbum incideris, longè graviori mœrore animi afflictus ſum. Majorem in modum à te peto, primum, ut pœnitenti velis eſſe animo, quod immodicum ingurgitando potum ebrietatem contraxeris, deinde ut amiſſæ recuperandæ ſanitati operam ſedulam naves. Si verò Divinâ inſpirante gratiâ, futurum id unquam ſit, ut priſtinam ad valetudinem reſtituaris, toto tum pectore hanc incumbe in curam, ut & illæſam corporis ſanitatem conſerves; & ad normam ſobrietatis te in poſterum conformes. Hâc tu ratione es illud facturus, quod cùm univerſis amicis tuis erit gratiſſimum, tum multo gratius

Tui Amantiſſimo,

T. A.

By a few Exerciſes, after this manner performed, the Scholar will quickly diſcern the *Uſe*, as well as the *Elegancy* of Latine Phraſes; and delight and labour, that all his Latines may ſwell and ſhine with ſuch like Enlargements and Adornments. For his Uſe to this purpoſe, amongſt the many extant, I recommend the little Phraſe-book put forth by Mr. *Farnaby*; as alſo that larger by Mr. *Huiſe*; but eſpecially that Book of Phraſes compiled by the Learned Dr. *Robinſon*, Arch-Deacon of *Gloceſter*, and ſometimes Maſter of *Wincheſter*-School, and going under the name of *Wincheſter Phraſes*. Neither will my own Idioms be unuſeful in that caſe.

Elſe the Teacher may take the *Phraſes* added to the ſeveral Chapters of my *Particles*, and out of them, Chapter by Chapter, or otherwiſe, as he ſhall think beſt, compoſe little Engliſhes, and give them for Dictates to be tranſlated by his Scholars, and profitably no doubt.

Or yet he may take this courſe, which I my ſelf have taken with good ſucceſs. He may contrive into ſeveral Engliſhes theſe *Two Collections of Phraſes* out of *Hermes Anglo-Latinus*, and *Godwins Antiquities*, and cauſe them to be tranſlated. This practice

ctice will assuredly bring to a right understanding of the Nature of a Phrase, and of the way to use it, where'ere it be found, whether in Author, or in Phrase-book.

And for the ease of the Teacher, and benefit of the Learner, I do here communicate two sets of such Englishes (in Dialogues) composed out of the Phrases of those Collections. Into the one of which, I have drawn all the Phrases in the Collection from *Hermes Anglo-Lat.* and so, that (except in a few of the first Dialogues, made before I had thought of this way) all the Phrases in every Dialogue lye close together, and within a narrow compass of the Book, so that if the Child cannot fetch them out of the Store-house of his Memory, he may find them with his eye within the limits of a Page of his Book: and the like is done in those composed of *Godwins Phrases.* Try and trust.

XXXIV. DIALOGUES

Composed (in order to the shewing of Children the Use of Phrases) out of, or agreeably to the Phrases collected out of Hermes Anglo-Latinus.

DIALOGUE. I.

Edward. Thomas.

Edw. IF my Master will needs make me make this English into Latine, I will make, as if I knew not how to make Latine.

Tho. You will never make him believe that tale: for he hath heard, that you can make a Latine Verse: and so he will think you mean to make a fool of him.

Edw. I would be loth to make him angry at me, in regard he hath used to make much of me, when I do well.

Tho. Make haste then, and make an end of the task he sets you. If you want any thing, I will make it good. And if he be not pleased with your doings, I will make you friends again.

DIALOGUE II.

William. Richard.

Will. HOW long are you making me a fire?

Rich. I make what haste I can.

Will. Have you made my bed yet?

Rich.

Rich. No. I have Supper to make ready first.

Will. Why do you not make a leg, when you speak to me, but make a mouth at me?

Rich. Because you are always making a stir about nothing, as if some body had made you a King, and had given you power to make Laws at home, and to make War abroad: when as you (poor man) are no such thing.

Will. Whilst I go out of doors to make water, make you haste to make an end of your business within doors, lest I make you be whipt for your idleness and saucines.

Rich. It is not you, that can make me do more than I list my self.

DIALOGUE III.

Henry. Peter.

Hen. HOW does your Master?

Pet. He is alive and sound.

Hen. When I saw him last, he looked somewhat pallish.

Pet. He is indeed pale most an end.

Hen. He crack't much of his wealth. I wonder what he made of his last years Crop.

Pet. He sold it for neither more nor less, than it stood him in.

Hen. Was it you, that crack't of your Exploits even now?

Pet. It was I.

Hen. Why then are you now in such a fear, that you are not able to say a word?

Pet. I am by Nature somewhat timorous, and a little matter puts me in a fear.

Hen. Do well, and fear not.

Pet. Methink that you, being weary with travelling, should lay you down, and get a nap.

Hen. It is good advice: especially since I have nought to do.

DIALOGUE IV.

Robert. Arthur.

Rob. I Saw t'other day some fine Summer-apples in an Orchard at the end of the Town. Who will go with me to get them?

Arth. Roger, I believe, will.

Rob. What is such a little fellow, as he, good for? he shall not.

Arth. If my poor help can do any good, you shall more command me, than any petty King.

Rob. Says't thou so, my dear heart? Then go we. But, I doubt, we shall not easily get over the Brick-wall.

Arth. And I am a little fearful, lest some eye-witness, busied about Household-affairs, should see us from the top of the house. And if we be discryed, we had better have been in the farthest part of the World.

Rob. You say true. And besides, what fools shall we be, if for so small a gain, as so poor a pittance of fruit, as we shall get, will amount to, we shall do that, for which, besides our pain and shame here, we may lie, and burn for ever in the bottom of Hell.

Arth. I love Apples well: but do not like to pay so dear for them. So let them alone.

DIALOGUE V.

Peregrine. Edward.

Per. WHO made that new Song, which is so cryed up?

Edw. A certain pedling Poet, who hath nought, but one small field to live on.

Per. Whereabout lives he?

Edw. About the lower end of the street, at the end of the Town.

Per. I thought he had lived in the midst of the City.

Edw. I met him this morning at break of day: and he look't like one born in an unlucky hour. But look, here's the man his own self, who made that Song, we are speaking of. The rest of our discourse we must leave till another time.

DIALOGUE VI.

Allen. Benjamin.

All. WHY do you not repair that house of yours? It is like to fall.

Benj. It is my Brother's. Let him look to it if he will. He sees its ruinousness himself every day.

All. Perhaps he hath not wherewithal to repair it. And you your self should do something to uphold it, not only as being his Tenant, but his Brother.

Benj. If his house come down, then that pride of his will come down, which will neither let him know himself, nor any friend of his.

All. Your own discourse bewrays you to be an unkind Brother. And were I your Brother, I my self would pull down my house with my own hands, rather than you should live in any house of mine.

Benj.

Benj. I my ſelf have ſeen a man do as much as that comes to, with mine own eyes. But what got he by that? My Brother, I hope, will have ſome wit in his anger, and not pull an old houſe over his ears.

DIALOGUE VII.

Francis. Titus.

Fran. IF you will look hither a little, *Titus*, you ſhall ſee who comes here.

Tit. Be he who he will, I care not for him, whoe're he be, he looks like a ſloven.

Fran. If he be ſo, he is not by himſelf in that: but is followed by many. Perhaps he hath tarried long abroad out of doors: and thence it is, that he is not altogether ſo neat in his cloaths. But what doſt thou think I have been doing?

Tit. You look as if you had been writing. And what, I pray you, was it that you writ?

Franc. I had heard, that there is coyning money enough to ſink a Ship. And I was writing a friend word of it.

Tit. It is not for a little weight a Ship will ſink. Speak out your words, when you ſpeak ſuch loud things.

Franc. How you anſwer! you are as ſturdy as a dry ſtick that will break before it bow.

Tit. The day is well-nigh ſpent, and the night drawing on. So fare you well.

Franc. And fare you well too, who are always doing, but never make any riddance.

DIALOGUE. VIII.

George. James.

Geo. I Hear, *James*, that *Humphry* is to go away within this two or three days.

Jam. Truly, *George*, he hath of a long time been very deſirous to go back into his own Country.

Geo. You mean that foreign Country, into which he went, after he was broken in his own.

Jam. You have no reaſon to upbraid him with his misfortune, ſince you have no cauſe, through any wrong by him, to complain of him.

Geo. Call you that misfortune, which was indiſcretion! How could he hope to thrive, who could never forbear doing miſchief.

Jam. His going hence hath had good luck, and it is somewhat better with him now, than formerly.

Geo. It waxeth night. And I am to go a hunting betimes to morrow. So fare him well, and you too.

DIALOGUE IX.

Chriſtopher. Brian.

Chri. YOU riſe, *Brian*, very early to play. I wiſh you would riſe as early to ſtudy.

Bri. Chriſtopher, here is one come to intreat our Maſter, that we may play to morrow. What will you adviſe him to do? For himſelf knows not what to ſay.

Chri. Let him ſay, that the Gentleman, who lately commended his Son to him to be taught, earneſtly deſires him to come to him, and hath ſent his Man before to intreat his company. But ſtay, is he a fit man to go to our Maſter? We had beſt take a little time to adviſe of that. But why are you ſo deſirous of playing?

Bri. The greateſt allurement to play is the cuſtom of playing.

Chri. But when our Maſter is intreated, we ſhall yet have our Fathers to intreat.

Bri. They will be ruled by our Maſter.

Chri. No ſuch matter. I wiſh they would. It would be better both for them and us.

DIALOGUE X.

Jaſper. Francis.

Jaſp. FRancis, your Uncle went a journey: is he come back yet?

Fran. He was not come back laſt night. But whether he be come this morning, I cannot tell.

Jaſp. Perhaps you were gone to bed, before he was come, or were gone abroad, before he was up.

Fran. Really, *Jaſper*, if he ſhould be gone away again before I ſee him, I am undone. And for fear I ſhould not ſee him, I have made ſuch haſte, that I am run out of breath.

Jaſp. My Father gave me an Apple well worth the eating. But I want a Knife to cut it withal: elſe I would give you ſome of it.

Fran. I do ſo love Apples, eſpecially when they are ripe, that if you give me never ſo ſmall a pittance, I ſhall thank you for it. And here's a Pen-knife (if that will ſerve) to cut it withal.

Jaſ

Jaſp. You are wiſe to have it about you.

Fran. And you are good, for giving to me what you love your ſelf.

DIALOGUE XI.

Guy. Timothy.

Guy. TImothy, what account do you make of *Peter?*

Tim. Truly, *Guy*, I think him about to fall; he is ſo great a Gameſter at Dice.

Guy. Some would think him to deſerve to be praiſed for that.

Tim. But I think rather, that he ſhould be puniſhed for it. For, taught by the old Proverb, I ſhall ever think a Dicer, the better Player, the worſer man.

DIALOGUE XII.

Philip. Bartholomew.

Phil. BArtholomew, are you and *Laurence* made friends again?

Bart. We differ but about one thing. I would have him go to School to ſtudy; and he does nothing but trifle away his time, and play the fool. You cannot but weep to think, how he loſeth himſelf. For what elſe is it to loſe ones time, but to loſe ones ſelf?

Phil. You can reliſh nothing but grave and ſerious things: and therefore are not ſo well pleaſed with his freedoms. But truly there is not a day, but I ſee and obſerve him; and I can find nothing, but what is well adviſed, to come from him.

Bart. I make no complaints but to you: and if you will pardon me, but for this one time, I will complain no more.

DIALOGUE XIII.

Francis. William.

Fran. WIll. up, and go to the Scholars Chambers from door to door, and call them up one by one.

will. I am a little afraid, they ſhould be a little angry with me for calling them up ſo ſoon.

Fran. A Scholar ſhould be at his Maſters beck. See you go then: and take heed you ſtay not. 'Tis a thing you may do without pains. And beſides, you can do very much with them. They have ſlept till broad day. And ſure 'tis time then for Scholars to riſe.

Will. I am much engaged to you. And for this cauſe, though they were above three miles off, I would go. Have you any thing more to ſay to me?

Fran. Only that you would be gone, and tell them word for word what I ſay. And now you may be gone for me.

Will. Well. What I do is at my Maſters command: and ſo I am out of gun-ſhot. And it will not be for my profit to be undutiful to him, however, conſidering his worth, he is not uſed with reſpect enough by others.

DIALOGUE XIV.

Hugh. Chriſtian.

Hugh. WHere's *Petron* think'ſt thou now?

Chr. For the preſent I believe he is at my houſe.

Hugh. He was your Fathers Footmen. What employment do you think him fit for?

Chr. He is my Lord's Secretary, and hopes e're long to be the King's Counſellor.

Hugh. I imagine, he is one of *Carteſes* Sect: and if ſo, then I wiſh he be long in his right mind.

Chr. I hope he will, for all that. For laſt night at my houſe he ſpake ſuch things at Supper-time, as ſpeak him a knowing man: and one that, like *Janus*, ſees both before and behind.

Hugh. However for the preſent new Sects of Philoſophers are applauded, in the days of yore they were not tolerated. I believe that he ſcarcely holds any thing excellent, which is not to be found in *Bacon*. You do well to ſpeak favourably of him, who is on your ſide.

Chri. I ſpake as the caſe ſtood, and not amiſs, as I ſuppoſe. And though for the preſent the *Ariſtotelian* and *Carteſian* Philoſophers differ one with another, yet they every hour grow nearer to an agreement.

Hugh. It was but in jeſt that I ſpake. And I would not that you ſhould report what I ſaid, word for word, to any other.

Chri. I have about ten miles to go to night: and ſo I muſt bid you farewel.

DIALOGUE XV.

Auguſtine. Geoffry.

Aug. WHat ſays the World of *Anthony*?

Geof. Truly, *Auguſtine*, by the moſt he is held an excellent Philoſopher.

Aug.

Aug. I am glad of it, *Geoffry.* I never feared, but that he would prove a Scholar. But hath he not the report of a Spend-thrift?

Geof. He is ſo far from that, that moſt an end he goes without his Supper to bed.

Aug. I would gladly ſee him, and talk with him.

Geof. Say you ſo? Then I will preſently go to the man, and bring him to you, if you will but lay this burden on me.

Aug. Will you do ſo? Then you will ſhew your ſelf a man indeed. And unleſs you had rather go on foot, than on horſe-back, here's a Horſe for you to ride on.

Geof. There is no need of my going: for look; here is the man himſelf we were ſpeaking of. And now I remember my ſelf, he told me he would come to Town to day to ſee you.

Aug. I am glad on't. But you ſhould have told me of it before.

Geof. I ne're thought on't.

DIALOGUE XVI.

Ambroſe. Edmund.

Amb. WHat diſeaſe is *Hierome* ſick of?

Edm. An Ague.

Amb. What Ague is he ſick of?

Edm. A Quartan.

Amb. Which way go they about to cure him?

Edm. That, that never any before did.

Amb. Which, I pray?

Edm. When he is in his hot Fit, they pour on cold water.

Amb. That way his Phyſicians never will be chief among others, nor have a Civic Crown given them. But at whoſe charge do they practiſe upon him?

Edm. At mine.

Amb. I wiſh they may be careful and ſucceſsful.

Edm. Amen.

DIALOGUE XVII.

Martin. Cyprian.

Mart. CYprian, if you be at leiſure to hear it, there is a thing that I would tell thee.

Cyp. I am a little buſie, *Martin*; but I will not hinder you from telling it.

Mart. I have cauſe to be glad, that you are ſo courteous. There is a thing that troubles me.

Cyp. Then, ſince there is nothing that hinders you from ſpeaking, ſpeak it out.

Mart. Men are deſirous moſt of all, of things, that are moſt hurtful to them.

Cyp. Well; be it ſo. What then?

Mart. There are ſome that ſay, that I rob'd a Neighbour's Orchard t'other day.

Cyp. If it be true, you have cauſe to be ſorry.

Mart. I am innocent, and hate ſo great a wickedneſs, which is down-right ſtealing. But there is no room for me to clear my ſelf.

Cyp. Then let it not trouble you to ſuffer innocently; but take your ſufferings in good part. Buſineſſes hinder me from ſtaying any longer. And ſo I muſt bid you, Farewel.

DIALOGUE XVIII.

Theodore. Benjamin.

Theo. THE way, *Benjamin*, is, I think, of the ſame length from *Huntington* to *Lincoln*, that it is from *London* to *Huntington*. How far off from *London* was *Everard*, when you received from him that poor piece of a Letter?

Ben. He was two days journey off.

Theo. What ſhould the matter be, that he makes no more haſte home?

Ben. I believe he is ſick of his old diſeaſe.

Theo. What may that ſickneſs be?

Ben. He is ſcarce of money.

Theo. He ſhould make the more haſte for that. But if he do not want credit, he may reckon, that ſo much credit as he hath, ſo much money he may have. What is it that brings him into want? For, I hope, he neither goes a wenching, nor a ſudling at theſe years.

Ben. I think he is not given to Women: and 'tis but a poor deal of Wine that he drinks in a day. So that ſomewhat elſe, I ſuppoſe, is the matter. And indeed, I doubt, he minds not his Calling. And what Trade ſoever a man be of, he ſhould let his Hook be always hanging. Elſe, if he have any matter of money remaining of his Portion, it will ſoon be ſpent.

Theo. Methinks at this time of the day he ſhould underſtand himſelf.

Ben. So think I: but you ſee what a kind of man he is.

DIA-

DIALOGUE XIX.

Ephraim. Samuel.

Eph. WHY do they not carry into *Edmunds* Chamber things fit to kindle the fire?

Sam. Becauſe the weather is warm. And were it not; yet he endureth cold the beſt of any man living.

Eph. He hath juſt his Uncles conditions. But is he not ſick?

Sam. How ſick he is, I cannot tell. But he eats Beef heartily.

Eph. And in truth, unleſs I were very ſick indeed, I ſhould take the ſame courſe that he doth. You are the neareſt to him of any man, ask his Phyſicians advice about this.

Sam. I ſhould not envy you for your imitating him. But he makes uſe of no Phyſicians.

Eph. What meat ſoever I ſhould eat in my ſickneſs, I ſhould beware of it, that it hurt me not. But why hath he not the advice of a Phyſician.

Sam. Men that are in debt, and are not able to pay, ſeldom ask advice of Phyſicians, how ſick ſoever they be; unleſs they be brought to that weakneſs, that they are not underſtood by any, when they would tell their caſe: But I muſt be gone. *Edmund* ſalutes you. Farewel.

DIALOGUE XX.

Philip. Roger.

Phil. WHat, *Roger*, are we to have to Supper to night?

Rog. That, *Philip*, is a ſecret to me. But I ſaw the Cook getting ſomewhat ready that caſts a ſtrong ſmell. Saffron, I think, it ſmelt of.

Phil. Well: you are like to go ſupperleſs to bed, for ſome lewd pranks, that you have play'd.

Rog. I am given indeed a little to joking: but you are in a groſs errour, if you think me to have play'd any lewd pranks.

Phil. You may deny it, that you are guilty of any fault: but the day would fail me, if I ſhould reckon up all your crimes. And I am ſorry for you: for you are ſure to be puniſht, unleſs ſome friend come to your relief. But if you can wraſtle out of theſe troubles, I ſhall be heartily glad.

Rog. This is all I mind, to be innocent; at leaſt inoffenſive. And if I were the next moment to die, I know not, what any can condemn me for: but that ſome are ſo far from doing juſtice, that they know not the way of judging juſtly. And therefore I hope my Father will forbear me.

Phil.

Phil. The longer I have ſtay'd to talk with you, the more I ought to quicken my ſpeed. So, fare you well.

Rog. Farewel heartily.

DIALOGUE XXI.

Robert. Allen.

Rob. HOW old is *Gervaſe?*

All. He is about five and twenty years old.

Rob. What employment follows he moſt?

All. I think he minds Divinity moſt.

Rob. I thought he had ſtudied Phyſick.

All. There are every where ſo many old Phyſicians, that there is no where room for any new.

Rob. Has he ever preach't yet?

All. Yes: and it troubles me exceedingly, that I was not preſent at the Sermon.

Rob. What hindred you from being at it?

All. I had a great mind to have been by: but I was ſo buſie, that I was not at leiſure.

Rob. What do they ſay he preach't about?

All. That it was for Kings to command, and Subjects to obey.

Rob. If young men will be ruled by me, they ſhould not ſo ſoon preach of high things. For they will have much ado not to be in fault.

All. In that I cannot but yield to you.

Rob. Now it comes in my mind, I have ſomewhat to do within. I pray thee come into the Houſe.

All. Go you before, I will follow.

DIALOGUE XXII.

Simeon. Laurence.

Sim. WHere were the laſt Aſſizes kept?

Lau. At *Lincoln.*

Sim. And what news thence?

Lau. Ambroſe was condemned to death.

Sim. Who accuſed him of any crime?

Lau. Peter.

Sim. And what crime did he accuſe him of?

Lau. Of Treaſon.

Sim. I thought he had only ſued him in an Action of Treſpaſs, or at moſt had but accuſed him of Bribery.

Lau. Yes, he laid Treaſon to his charge.

Sim.

Sim. Were he only convicted of Theft, he might be pardoned; but being condemned for Treaſon, he will hardly eſcape being hang'd.

Lau. Let ſuch then as ſee his death, fear his puniſhment, and flie his fault.

DIALOGUE XXIII.

Charles. Hervic.

Ch. DO you never write to *Bernardine?*

Her. I have little heart to ſet pen to paper to write to a man, that hath caſt off all goodneſs.

Ch. Why ſay you ſo?

Her. So kind have I been to him, as to buy a Houſe for him; and ſo ungrateful has he been to me, as to diſcharge me of his houſe; nay and to threaten, that if ever I came to his houſe, he would ſet fire on the houſe.

Ch. I confeſs, I committed a buſineſs of great concernment to his charge, and he put a trick upon me.

Her. Then, I imagine, you will hereafter have nothing to do with his friendſhip; but forbid him your preſence.

Ch. I think, I ſhall ſo do.

Her. It is no more but what he deſerves.

DIALOGUE. XXIV.

Eraſmus. Meric.

Eraſ. WHY, *Meric*, did you give *Joſeph* a box on the ear?

Mer. Becauſe he would not let me have my Inkhorn.

Eraſ. You have no authority of your own over him: and I ſhall look to this, that you ſhall not uſurp mine.

Mer. Be pleaſed to forgive me this fault, and I promiſe you this, that I will do ſo no more.

Eraſ. That promiſe is but a ſhift: and be you never ſo crafty, I ſhall put you by all your ſhifts.

Mer. I ſhall provide better for my ſelf, than juſtly to provoke you. And if you will command me any ſervice, you ſhall find me faithful and diligent.

Eraſ. That is often ſaid, but ſeldom done.

Mer. For this once make tryal.

Eraſ. I will try.

DI A-

DIALOGUE XXV.

Francis. Gervaſe.

Fran. HAve you not ſeen old *Herbert* all this day?

Ger. Yes, not very long ago I ſaw him walking with his Son *Robert*.

Fran. Had he his Gown on, or his Coat?

Ger. His Gown.

Fran. They that are asked their opinion of him, report him a man skilful in Greek, and well skilled alſo in Martial Diſcipline.

Ger. Yes, but they ſay the Son wipes the old man of his money; and is like to ſtrip him of all his goods. And, what is worſe, his friends keep his tricks from his Father.

Fran. Such a Son deſerves to be made to go without his Portion. But put him in mind of his duty to his Father.

Ger. Young men are warned of many things, which are evil; but flie few. So 'tis to no purpoſe.

Fran. You cannot tell till you have tried. I intreat this of you. Let me prevail with you.

Ger. It can do no harm to try. I will do my endeavour.

DIALOGUE XXVI.

Samuel. Gerard.

Sam. WHat's the matter with *Bradwardine* this morning, that he hath ſuch a lowring look?

Ger. He is as buſie as can be a writing.

Sam. In writing what, is he ſo buſie?

Ger. In writing Verſes, whereof he muſt write out a whole Book.

Sam. And I am to write ſo many Epiſtles, that I have no leiſure to make my Theme. I wiſh you were at leiſure to help me.

Ger. Where's the laſt Epiſtle you wrote?

Sam. I have laid it a drying.

Ger. Will you go a fiſhing, when you have written that Epiſtle you are in hand withal?

Sam. I am not yet at leiſure: but you may for all me, when you pleaſe. And yet I wonder you ſhould have nothing elſe to do. I wiſh your Fathers letting you do as you liſt, make you not grow every day worſe than other.

Ger. There's no danger. I ſhall have a care of my ſelf.

Sam. Then leave your prating, and be gone.

Ger. So I will. Mind you your concerns.

DIALOGUE XXVII.

James. Chriſtopher.

Jam. ALas, *Chriſtopher*, what will become of *Robin?*

Chr. Why ſo, *James?* I ſaw him in ſafety, both the laſt day of *January*, and the third day of *February*.

Jam. Yea; but they ſay he is given to ſwear by *Jove*.

Chr. That indeed doth not become a child of that age (though many things of like ſort do happen in the life of man, as I could ſhew by many inſtances, which I have in readineſs, if it were not beſides my purpoſe.) And therefore 'tis fit he ſmart for his folly.

Jam. His Maſter, I underſtand, lives hard by. I ſhall hope to ſee him by and by: and then I will tell him of him.

Chr. His Maſter, I am ſure, will not take it ill.

Jam. That's well.

DIALOGUE XXVIII.

Cyriac. Paul.

Cyr. PAul, *Auguſtine* greets you well.

Paul. How does he himſelf, *Cyriac?*

Cyr. At preſent he is ſick of a Cough; beſides that he is lame of his feet.

Paul. I believe he is a man of good age.

Cyr. Yes truly, he is a man of good age.

Paul. What account do you make of him?

Cyr. Travel all *Europe* over by Sea and Land, and you will hardly find an honeſter man; and yet becauſe he is red-hair'd, he is of no account with ſome, which afflicts him ſo, that ſometimes he is not able to ſpeak for grief.

Paul. For your ſake, whatever others think, I ſhall have a good opinion of him; and you ſhall do well to comfort him, and bid him be of good courage.

Cyr. In confidence of your courteſie, I have ſaid thus much of him: and on that condition, you will have a kindneſs for him, I will ever be a Servant to you.

DIALOGUE XXIX.

Theodore. Arthur.

Theo. WHat ails *Demea*, that he is in ſuch an ill humor? He doth not uſe to be angry for nothing.

Arth.

Arth. I know not, unleſs it be, that his daughter has had a child by *Davus*. But ſure there is ſomething in't: for he is not able to ſpeak for trouble of mind.

Theo. Is he not rather ſick of want?

Arth. I do not think that is the matter: for he is in no want.

Theo. Whatever it be, you that are of the ſame temper with him, may do well to pacifie his mind.

Arth. In confidence of his good nature, and our old acquaintance, I will try what I can do.

DIALOGUE XXX.

Peter. Roger.

Pet. HOW does *Gobard* prize his ſilver Tankard and Spoons?

Rog. He offers them for ten pounds.

Pet. He asks too much for his commodities: will he not take under ten pounds for them, think you?

Rog. You will not buy them but at a great rate. And therefore it will be your wiſdom, though they be not all out worth ſo much, yet not to ſet them altogether at nought, as the faſhion is. Beſides, 'tis ſaid, he hath been offered eight pound for his Tankard.

Pet. I care not a ſtraw for that. It doth not weigh forty ounces. And for what ſome think about it, I weigh it not thus much. Others have other thoughts. And one skilful Seller, that will not go a nails breadth from the truth, is worth a thouſand unskilful Cheapners, who only ſpeak by gueſs.

Rog. I take in good part all you ſay; and bid you farewel.

DIALOGUE XXXI.

Guy. Edmund.

Guy. WHat Country-man is *Jaſper*?

Edm. He is a *Lincoln* man; but his Anceſtors were of *Lancaſhire*.

Guy. I believe him come of ſome great Houſe.

Edm. Well born, I believe, he is: for in all Contracts, I ſtill obſerve, he ſtands to his word: and it is a thing proper to a Gentleman in his dealing to rely on truth, not on craft.

Guy. Lincoln is now unguarded, though formerly well fortified: and leſs, I believe, by the half, than it was anciently.

Edm. I think as much: and thence, I ſuppoſe, the Proverb, *Lincoln was*, had its riſe.

Guy. How far is it from *London*?

Edm.

Edm. It is two days journey off at leaſt, if not three.

Guy. And yet once one, that went out at three a clock in the morning from *London*, ſupped that night at *Lincoln*.

Edm. Then he rid Poſt.

DIALOGUE XXXII.

Patrick. Dennis.

Pat. HOW comes it to paſs, *Dennis*, that you are walking abroad at this time of the night?

Den. I might ask you the ſame queſtion, *Patrick*. But truly for the ſpace of ſome years (I may ſafely ſay for this full four years) I have been uſed to ſit up till late at night: ſince when I do not much matter going to bed betime.

Pat. Then certainly you ſleep till fair day.

Den. Till fair day, do you ſay? nay even till broad day.

Pat. You never riſe, and walk, I believe, by night; nor are diſquieted with dreams in ſleep time.

Den. No ſuch thing hath indeed befallen me for many years paſt.

Pat. For how long is your going into *France* put off? For a year? or for a month?

Den. I think, but till ten days hence. I am not certain now: but I ſhall know within this two days. My Father talks of my going day after day. And in truth I ſhould have gone ſix years ago. But until within this month, it is a twelve-month ſince, I heard him ſpeak a word of it.

Pat. Within this four days, I being his Setter on, he reſolved it. But I have not ſeen him ſince then.

DIALOGUE XXXIII.

Stephen. Gerard.

Step. HOW go the ſquares in *Italy?*

Ger. Several, that came from about *Tarentum*, ſay, that at *Rome* all is well, and at *Milan*: but not at *Croton*, nor at *Venice*.

Step. Have you heard what things were done before *Naples?*

Ger. No; but they ſay, that the French Count is departed from before *Parma*.

Steph. What French Count do you ſpeak of?

Ger. Him, that in Council ſits next to the General. I have forgot both his Name and Title.

Step. How far was his Camp from the City?

Ger.

Ger. Above half a mile. Well, if you have any thing else to say, say it to day, and presently; for I must be gone: and to morrow shall be up to fit my self for going sooner, than I am wont.

Step. I have done.

Ger. Then farewel to you.

DIALOGUE. XXXIV.

Anthony. Miles.

Ant. I Cannot but wonder, *Miles*, how *Demea*, a man never born to Honour, should come to that height of insolence, as to despise his Kindred, and to say, when any of them comes near him, What do you touching of me? What do you coming at me?

Mil. He thinks they gape after his Estate.

Ant. I have a mind to creep into his favour, as far as it is possible to be done, but that I know not which way to take to do it.

Mil. He spake not a word of you, when I was with him last, whereby I could gather that he intended to make you his Heir: and therefore you had best give over your enterprise.

Ant. Then, though I have many things to say, yet I shall forbear to speak of more; and rest content with my own Estate.

Mil. 'Tis very well.

DIA-

XXXIII. DIALOGUES

Compoſed out of, or agreeably unto, the Phraſes collected out of Godwins *Antiquities.*

DIALOGUE I.

Thomas. George.

T. WHen *Romulus* was to build a new Town, he did wiſely to ſet out, where the Walls of it ſhould be.

G. But did he not demoliſh ſome old Town firſt, that he might have room in the place of that old one to ſet his new one?

T. No: he built it all ſtick and ſtone from the ground, and deſigned it to be a *Sanctuary*, whither Malefactors ſhould flie for ſafety, as to an *Altar*.

G. But I hope he deſigned that Juſtice ſhould be done there to every one: and that to that end, *Aſſizes* ſhould be kept there.

T. Yes, and he appointed where the Aſſizes ſhould be kept: and ordained too, that huge *Books* ſhould be kept for regiſtring of Laws, and recording *Acts* of Juſtice.

G. Such deſigns do not proceed from an unconſtant wit, or wavering mind: but from a perſon of ſolid judgment, whoſe is no rambling knowledge, notwithſtanding that he in riding may have with him his vaulting Horſes, and vault now and then from the one to the other.

T. Nor from a perſon ſo old, as for dotage was to be debarred from giving his Voice at the Election of Magiſtrates: but of one that in a Race could, for ſtrength, hold out from the ſtart to the ſtaff; and would, for conſtancy in any good purpoſe, perſevere from the beginning to the end.

G. Nor from any ignoble perſon, who had not courage, upon honourable Terms, to enter the Liſts with any Appellant, that ſhould give him a Challenge.

T. Nor did he only ſet out, where the *City* ſhould be, but alſo by the Voice of the Augurs appointed where *Temples* ſhould be built, and *Churches* ſhould ſtand: ſo that at Publick Altars, and not only by Private Fire-hearths men might ſerve God.

G. Under ſuch a Prince, who would not chearfully ſerve in the Wars, and manfully fight for God and his Country?

Ger. Above half a mile. Well, if you have any thing else to say, say it to day, and presently; for I must be gone: and to morrow shall be up to fit my self for going sooner, than I am wont.

Step. I have done.

Ger. Then farewel to you.

DIALOGUE. XXXIV.

Anthony. Miles.

Ant. I Cannot but wonder, *Miles*, how *Demea*, a man never born to Honour, should come to that height of insolence, as to despise his Kindred, and to say, when any of them comes near him, What do you touching of me? What do you coming at me?

Mil. He thinks they gape after his Estate.

Ant. I have a mind to creep into his favour, as far as it is possible to be done, but that I know not which way to take to do it.

Mil. He spake not a word of you, when I was with him last, whereby I could gather that he intended to make you his Heir; and therefore you had best give over your enterprise.

Ant. Then, though I have many things to say, yet I shall forbear to speak of more; and rest content with my own Estate.

Mil. 'Tis very well.

DIA-

XXXIII. DIALOGUES

Compoſed out of, or agreeably unto, the Phraſes collected out of Godwins *Antiquities.*

DIALOGUE I.

Thomas. George.

T. WHen *Romulus* was to build a new Town, he did wiſely to ſet out, where the Walls of it ſhould be.

G. But did he not demoliſh ſome old Town firſt, that he might have room in the place of that old one to ſet his new one?

T. No: he built it all ſtick and ſtone from the ground, and deſigned it to be a *Sanctuary*, whither Malefactors ſhould flie for ſafety, as to an *Altar*.

G. But I hope he deſigned that Juſtice ſhould be done there to every one: and that to that end, *Aſſizes* ſhould be kept there.

T. Yes, and he appointed where the Aſſizes ſhould be kept: and ordained too, that huge *Books* ſhould be kept for regiſtring of Laws, and recording *Acts* of Juſtice.

G. Such deſigns do not proceed from an unconſtant wit, or wavering mind: but from a perſon of ſolid judgment, whoſe is no rambling knowledge, notwithſtanding that he in riding may have with him his vaulting Horſes, and vault now and then from the one to the other.

T. Nor from a perſon ſo old, as for dotage was to be debarred from giving his Voice at the Election of Magiſtrates: but of one that in a Race could, for ſtrength, hold out from the ſtart to the ſtaff; and would, for conſtancy in any good purpoſe, perſevere from the beginning to the end.

G. Nor from any ignoble perſon, who had not courage, upon honourable Terms, to enter the Liſts with any Appellant, that ſhould give him a Challenge.

T. Nor did he only ſet out, where the *City* ſhould be, but alſo by the Voice of the Augurs appointed where *Temples* ſhould be built, and *Churches* ſhould ſtand: ſo that at Publick Altars, and not only by Private Fire-hearths men might ſerve God.

G. Under ſuch a Prince, who would not chearfully ſerve in the Wars, and manfully fight for God and his Country?

DIALOGUE II.

Edward. Anthony.

E. TEll me, I pray you, *Anthony*, whether *Carenius* were a free-born Citizen, or a free-made Citizen: and ſpeak from your heart.

A. I ſhould think my ſelf curſed to Hell, if I ſhould lye to you. I believe him a Citizen made ſuch by *Cooptation*.

E. I thought him indeed but a Gentleman of the firſt Head, a meer upſtart Citizen; one made free by ſome kind of Maſter, that had a mind to ſet him at liberty, and give him his freedom: and, that he might no longer paſs amongſt inferiour perſons, paid the debts that he was run into, not ſuffering any to ſue him for non-payment; and gave him Eſtate, whereby he was enabled to keep a Horſe for the ſervice of the War; and thence I judged it was, that by degrees he came to be a Nobleman.

A. Whatever he was once, all the Senators of *Rome*, as well thoſe of the Upper as Lower Houſe, do now think very well of him, and ſet much by him.

DIALOGUE III.

Henry. Gervaſe.

H. THough ſome are not to be perſwaded by reaſon ſo much, as by a good cudgelling, that there are any Gods at all, whether of the Greater, or Leſſer Nations, yet the *Romans* were perſwaded, that each Nation had their *Country-Gods*, each City their *Tutelar Gods*, and that there were *Gods common* to all; that the Women had their *Guardian Angels*; nay that every man had from his birth a *good* and *evil Angel* attending on him.

G. So have I heard, *Henry*; and that theſe Angels did obſerve every mans actions; and were angry when any thing was done amiſs; ſo that if any misfortune befel a man (as there is no man without his misfortune) they would ſay it was done againſt the pleaſure of the Gods.

H. Gervaſe, Thoſe *Romans* were jolly Fellows; and though amongſt them there were ſome, that would be thieves to their own carcaſs, yet there were others, who would pamper their kite; and though they lived in never ſo little a Cottage, or were men of no ſetled dwelling, yet they would keep their Feaſts, and therein play the Gluttons, and after all, drink their Grace-cup alſo.

G. They were Lords of the World, and ſo might do what they liſted for any body elſe.

DIA-

DIALOGUE. IV.

Edmund. William.

E. I Suppoſe, *William*, you diſcern it is ſeed-time.

W. Yes, *Edmund*; and in regard it hath thundred luckily, let us with good luck begin the work; a work truly not to be diſdained, no not by the *Protectors of the Commons.*

E. I ſhould be ſorry to begin it with ill luck: and that we may go about it with the counſel of ſome *Augur*, let us conſult *Craſſus* in the caſe, and deſire him to offer up a Sacrifice for us; and if upon his ſacrificing, lucky tokens appear, we will not make our Feaſt without Wine.

W. Agreed: but we muſt go to ſome other perſon; for I have heard that he hath long ſince given over being Prieſt.

DIALOGUE V.

Arthur. Stephen.

A. I Suppoſe, *Stephen*, it is no news to you, that after a denunciation of War, it came to a Battel betwixt the *Romans* and the *Grecians.* But what, I pray, was the iſſue of that Fight?

S. The Battel truly was fought with various ſucceſs for a long time: but at laſt the Roman General, who had challenged the Enemy into the Field, encountring the Grecian General hand to hand, by his own ſtrength overcame, and killed him; and though it were a hard task to do this, yet, that he did it, is undoubtedly true.

A. No doubt but, after the Battel was over, they feaſted at Supper on dainty chear.

S. In that they did nothing, but what was right, and uſual.

DIALOGUE VI.

Richard. Thomas.

R. IT was a ſumptuous Feaſt, *Thomas*, which we were entertained at to night.

T. You might, *Richard*, have called it a *Commencement-Supper.* May he that made it, daily grow in Honour as well as Vertue.

R. But I wonder you ſhould approach it without due reſpect, with unwaſhen hands and dirty feet.

T. Eigh! The Pot calls the Pan burnt-arſe. Were not you as bad your ſelf?

R. None, but a rude fellow, would have ſaid ſo. Beſides, how you devoured, what you ſhould but lightly have taſted of, and even before Grace was ſaid! 'Tis a wonder you had patience to ſtay till the Sacrifice was ſlain. By theſe ill manners of yours you bring me to ſuffer for your folly.

T. What ſhould a man do, when he is about any thing, but mind what he is about? I cannot abide to be ſo long at, Shall I? Shall I? Beſide, no bit's ſweeter than the firſt taſtings.

R. Had you been a *Roman*, you muſt have ſatisfied for your crime by the Sacrifice of a Lamb.

T. 'Tis better that I am what I am.

DIALOGUE VII.

Anthony. Tobias.

A. YOU hear, *Toby*, that my Couſin *Andrew* intends to marry your Niece *Joanna*.

T. Yes, *Anthony*, I hear ſo. They ſay the Marriage-contracts are written down in Nuptial Tables, and atteſted by the Seals of Witneſſes to thoſe Contracts. He alſo hath provided himſelf of a *Ring* to give her; and ſhe, of a yellow *Veil* wherein to be brought to him: and both of them have touched (all after the manner of the ancient *Romans*) both fire and water.

A. And are they not making a Marriage-bed too, wherein the new married Couple are to lie, after the Bridegroom hath led his Bride by Torch-light from her Fathers houſe to his own?

T. Yes; and they are providing Chear for the Wedding-feaſt to be held the next day.

A. I perceive they are reſolved, it ſhall not be a Wedding and no Wedding; and therefore will omit no Ceremony, not ſo much as the parting of the Brides hair with a Fencers Spear, nor the ſprinkling of the new-married Woman with water.

T. I wiſh their Marriage-day may be followed with a perpetual ſucceſſion of days, ſtill every one more happy than the former.

A. I hope it may be ſo, if he ſuffer her to be Lady, where he is Lord; and ſhe ſo daily grow in grace, that he may have no juſt occaſion to divorce her.

T. It is a ſad thing, when things come to that paſs, that the Husband is forced to tell the Wife, that he will have nothing to do with her, and bid her take her things, and be packing.

A. It ſeldom comes to this, till the one, or the other hath caſt off all goodneſs.

T. I hope better things of thoſe two.

DIA-

DIALOGUE VIII.

Polydore. Archibald.

P. WIll you go, *Archibald*, to the Funeral of old *Reginald?*

A. That old Carle is dead, it ſeems, at laſt.

P. Yes, and we muſt follow him in order, as Nature ſhall permit.

A. I fear we ſhall come too late: for above an hour ago I heard the Bell-man crying, that it was then time to go; for that he was then carrying forth a doors.

P. Perhaps ſo: but the Funeral Rites require ſome time to be orderly performed in, and we may come ſoon enough for all that; at leaſt to his Funeral Sermon.

A. Who is to make it?

P. His Couſin *Cameron*, as being the next akin to him, and who cloſed his dying eyes, and received his laſt breath.

A. How long has he been kept up unburied?

P. Seven days; and in all that time his body hath been every day waſhed with water, and anointed with Oyl, in hope he might by thoſe means be revived, if not quite dead, but only aſleep. After that he was given up for gone, and his body in a Gown placed upon a Bed with his feet forward to be carried forth to Burial.

A. His then is not like to be a Burial, and no Burial.

P. No ſure. Will you go then?

A. E're we ſhall get thither, the Prieſt will thrice have beſprinkled the people with water, and the chief mourning Woman have told them, they had their leave to depart. So I think it to no purpoſe to go.

P. Then fare you well. I will go by my ſelf.

DIALOGUE IX.

Jonathan. Giles.

J. KNow you the reaſon, *Giles*, why the *Romans* did on the fourth of *April* put on their beſt Cloaths?

G. Who I? why not? that is no ſecret, then began the Plays, inſtituted in Honour of their Great Goddeſs *Cybele*, to be celebrated.

J. 'Tis better than I looked for. I perceive, that neither you have loſt your labour, nor your Father his coſt in your education.

G. I ſuppoſe, you can tell alſo, why, when there was Running of Coach-Races, and Fighting at Whorlebats in the Great *Cirque*, the people flocked thither.

J. Many were the reaſons: and ſome went for one reaſon, others for another; ſome to ſee, and ſome to be ſeen; and ſome becauſe they had a mind to lay wagers; they being of different Factions that ran, and fought.

G. Had you ſaid this in a company of Learned perſons, you had been highly applauded for your anſwer. I am alone, and can only ſay, Well.

DIALOGUE X.

Walter. Herman.

W. EVſebius, I hear, having had a deſire of his accompliſhed, hath vowed to build a Church.

H. Yes, and to inſtitute a Feaſt too in Honour of that Deity, whom he dedicates his Church unto.

W. Then he is liable to make good his Vow: for when ſolemn Vows are made to God, the maker of them is bound to the performance of his Vow.

H. This he knows: and therefore he hath bound himſelf to make good his Vow.

W. 'Tis well: the paying of this Vow may be the obtaining of another Prayer.

H. Like enough.

DIALOGUE XI.

Albert. Lewis.

A. AMongſt the Honorary Games, wherewith the People of *Rome* were complemented by Muneraries, Fencing, I think, *Lewis*, was in greateſt requeſt.

L. I think ſo too, *Albert*; eſpecially when, not Slaves, and Captives only fought therein, but hireling Citizens, yea and Noble men; and they fought, not for pleaſure, but for life, and that without diſcharge, being bound by Oath to fight to death, or yield their bodies to be whipt, or burnt.

A. Yet did they in a flouriſh make uſe of Weapons for ſhow, before they fought at ſharps with weapons for fight.

L. Yes, yes: and it was one thing when they flouriſhed, another thing when they fought. Their flouriſh was but ſportive, their fight was earneſt. When once they came to fight with naked weapons, the ſtouteſt He was ſometimes put into a maze, and

and forced to change his poſture, yea though he were one, that had won many a Prize, and had been thought worthy to be diſcharged. For beſides the down-right blows, which they dealt, they endeavoured to put tricks on one another.

A. Sure it was pleaſant to behold the *hoodwinkt Fencers* winking and ſtriking, either on Horſe-back, or out of Chariots.

L. Juſt as pleaſant, as it is to hear two ignorant perſons contending, after their manner, about things which neither of them underſtandeth.

A. Well, not all their ribbanded Garlands, nor pecuniary Rewards, ſhould ever have tempted me to dare any man to fight in ſuch Combats, wherein my life muſt lie at the mercy of the wavering people, and I muſt be killed or ſaved, as they ſhould hold down, or turn up their Thumb.

L. Nor me neither, I trow: for though ſome men, good at any thing, not only like, but praiſe theſe Recreatory diverſions in lofty ſtyle, yet I deſire, that the end of my life may be attended, if not with gladneſs, yet at leaſt with quietneſs.

DIALOGUE XII.

Seleucus. Pomponius.

S. THis I obſerve, *Pompony*, that till Children be grown to Mans eſtate, they will not leave Boys play: but be either playing at Ball, or whipping of Tops, or playing at Even or Odd, or gueſſing Croſs or Pile.

P. Yea, *Seleucus*; and when they are grown up to years of diſcretion, yet ſtill they will be playing at Cheſs, or Tables.

S. It were allowable, that men ſhould refreſh themſelves now and then with thoſe Divertiſements, did they not venture ſo much (ſometimes their whole Eſtates) on one lucky or unlucky Caſt.

P. He that is on the loſing ſide, hath no other way many times to recover his leſſer loſſes, but by hazarding greater, and then he is for winning all, or loſing all at one Throw.

S. I diſlike theſe things the more, in regard many times of the inequality of the Gameſters in point of skill, who oft, in that, are a Gooſe to a Chicken.

P. He ſhall be thought amongſt friends, to have broke the League of Hoſpitality, who being challenged to play, ſhall refuſe to gratifie a friend therein; eſpecially when it is but at ſmall Games that they are to play.

S. They ſay indeed, 'tis better to play at ſmall Games than ſit out: but too many times they begin with ſmall Games, and go

on to greater, till much money is loſt on on one ſide or other; and that's the thing, which I diſlike.

P. It will be ſo, where men cannot rule their affections and paſſions, but do enſlave their reaſon to their appetite: elſe they might give over in good time, and before they have loſt more than they can be willing to ſpare.

S. Would Gameſters reſolve before hand to give all their winnings to the poor, they would not be ſo greedy of playing, as they are.

P. I think ſo too.

S. And if they would reſolve not to loſe at one time above a certain moderate ſumm prefixed within their own minds, they would not be ſo great loſers, as many times they be.

P. No doubt of that.

DIALOGUE XIII.

Abraham. Jeremy.

A. WEre you, *Jeremy*, at my Lord *Geiton*'s at Supper t'other night?

J. Yes, *Abraham*, I was. He was very earneſt with me in his invitation to come: ſo I went.

A. I believe my Lord had at his Table unbidden Gueſts enow. And truly had he bidden me, I had needed but ſmall invitation. And how were ye entertained?

J. Not with a Dole, nor with ſcanty Proviſions, but a plentiful Supper. In the firſt Meſs were ſerved up Mulberries, Sauſages, Eggs, &c. In the laſt, variety of ſweet and delicious Meats. In the middle Courſe fat Veniſon, and that I took for the chief Diſh, though ſome might prefer Beef before it, and take that for the moſt ſubſtantial Diſh. And from the beginning to the ending there was plenty of Mirth and Wine.

A. A right Supper indeed you tell me of; a Supper in which one could hardly have told what to eat of heartilieſt.

J. So, as I tell you, were we entertained.

A. Much good d'it you.

DIALOGUE XIV.

Allen. Petr.

A. HOW do you intend to order your Journies this Winter?

P. On the laſt day of *December* I ſhall be at *Lincoln*; on the firſt of *January* at *Grantham*. Thence on the fourth of *January* I will

will remove to *Stamford*; and on the fifth of *January* lie at *Cambridge*. On the twelfth of *January* I will ſet forwards towards *London*, and on the thirteenth of *January* I hope to lie at my Siſters houſe in *London*.

A. But when intend you to reach *Paris*?

P. At latter *Lammas*.

A. But why will you travel (as I obſerve you intend to do) only on ſome certain days, and not ſtir on others?

P. Becauſe ſome of thoſe days they account fortunate, and ſome of them unfortunate: and I ſhould be loth to take any Journey on an unlucky day.

A. But I thought you would have ſaid, becauſe ſome of theſe days were Holy-days, or half Holy-days at leaſt, and other, working days.

P. We Lawyers do not much mind nor matter, whether days be all Holy, or half Holy, but whether they be Law-days or no. For on whole Court-days we wholly attend the Courts, and on half Court-days as much as is neceſſary. Upon Non Leet-days we have other things to do.

A. Yes, I believe you have always one wrangling Fellow or other to do withal, and on thoſe days you converſe with ſuch Fellows to get new work, for which you will ſit up till towards midnight, and riſe again, if need be, a little after midnight.

P. Away, Sirrah, you are a Wag. I'le have you marked, if I live, for a black Sheep.

A. Your moſt humble Servant, Mr. *Ignoramus*.

P. And, fare you well, good Dr. *Dulman*.

DIALOGUE XV.

Eraſmus. Conradus.

E. WHen think you will that old man *Julian* give up the Ghoſt?

C. Long ſince he made his Will, as I hear, in a Meeting of Prieſts.

E. Made he it in Writing, or by word of Mouth?

C. In Writing.

E. I wonder whom he made his chief Heir.

C. His Brother's eldeſt Son.

E. And whom hath he named for next Heir to him?

C. His Siſter's youngeſt Son.

E. And what hath he done for *Peter Everard*?

C. He hath a Legacy given him.

E. It is a good thing for men to make their Wills in writing: for ſo is the poſſeſſion of their Goods, when they are dead, likely

likely to be according to, and not againſt the Wills of the Teſtators.

C. So was the Law of old: and for my part I like no innovations.

E. And if ſuch a Law were now to be made, I ſhould vote as it was deſired. I think the man hath ſo lived, as to be well beloved and eſteemed by his Fellow-Citizens.

C. Out of doubt: for when he ſtood for the Burgeſs-ſhip, whereas his Competitor had not nineteen Voices, every body ſtood for him.

E. Did your Father vote for him?

C. He would have done it, if he might have been ſuffered: but he is above ſixty years old; and ſo hath a Writ of Eaſe given him.

E. He is well, in my thoughts, he's freed from that trouble.

C. I e'en think ſo too, as the World rules.

DIALOGUE XVI.

George. Hervie.

G. I Think, *Hervie*, that before the invention of Parchment, they did uſe to write on the leaves of an *Egyptian* Ruſh, called *Papyrus*.

H. Yes, *George*, and before that on the inward rinds of Trees. Nay, I have read, that they ſometimes wrote in Leaden Plates, and ſometimes in Tables of Wood, covered with Wax; ſome remembrances of which things I found in my Study the other day, as I was looking among my foul Papers.

G. But, I trow, they did not write on thoſe Tables with pen and ink, as we do on paper.

H. No, no: they wrote with an Iron inſtrument, which they called a *Style*, which was ſharp-pointed at one end, and broad, but ſharp-edged alſo, at the other end; that with the ſharp point they might engrave any thing into thoſe Tables, and with the broad edge ſcrape any thing out, which they had written and miſliked.

G. That was wiſely contrived: for the moſt cautelous may ſometimes have occaſion to recant what he hath ſaid.

H. And of theſe Materials they compoſed, not only their Books of Account, and Statute-books; but alſo Letters of Protection; and Bills of Sale; and even their ordinary Letters ſent by Letter-Carriers from one to another: which they ſo cloſed, with Thread and Wax, that nothing could be read on the inſide till the Seal was broken up, though it were eaſie for any man to know

know from whom the Letter came, if ſent from a Friend, by the Hand and Seal on the outſide.

G. They did then contrary to what we do now. But every Age hath its faſhion. And even the *Romans* themſelves in after-times changed their manner of Writing, and wrote with Pen and Ink on Paper, whereunto, eſpecially if it were a Book which they wrote, they did faſten a Roller.

H. It is no ſhame to lay down old Cuſtoms, and take up new, when the new are better than the old. Hardly an Author doth write a Book, but he doth change his mind as to ſome things, before he hath brought it to an end. And when minds are changeable, it is no marvel if manners and faſhions change too.

DIALOGUE XVII.

Paul. Ulpian.

P. PRay, *Ulpian*, give me ſome account of the *Romans* manner of making their Laws.

U. I ſhall readily do it, *Paul*, as far as my poor skill will ſerve you. And the firſt thing I call to mind is, that after one of thoſe eight Magiſtrates, qualified for that purpoſe, had by himſelf firſt conſidered of a Law fit to be made, and then conſulted ſome Lawyer at leaſt, if not the whole Senate about it, he did publiſh the Law to be made, by hanging it out three Market-days together in the view of the people, that the conveniency of it might be examined and conſidered of.

P. Very well: and what was the next thing?

U. The next thing was, that the people being gathered together, and the Law read by the Town-Clerk, he that had promulged it, did, by an Oration to the people, move, that the Law might be made, being ſometimes ſeconded by his friends, and ſometimes oppoſed by others.

P. And what followed then?

U. The Names of the Tribes, Centuries, or Pariſhes, being caſt into a Pitcher, and the Lots ſhaken together, the People gave their Votes, that Tribe ſuffraging firſt, that was firſt choſen, of which Prerogative Tribe he that had the good fortune to have the Voices, was in great hope of obtaining the Voices of the other Tribes, which ſeldom or never ſwerved from the determination of the Prerogative Tribe. Then, unleſs ſome Magiſtrate or Augur did forbid the proceedings, or ſome chanced to fall ill of the Falling-ſickneſs, or ſome other thing happened, whereby the Aſſembly was diſſolved, the Law was enacted.

P. After this, what was done next?

U. After

U. After the Law had been approved and recorded, it was publiſhed, and laid up in the Treaſure-houſe, keeping its force till it were cancelled.

P. I thank you for this account, which you have given me of this thing.

U. Much good may it do you.

DIALOGUE XVIII.

Caleb. Jacob.

C. THE *Romans*, as I underſtand, *Jacob*, were not all men of one rank in point of Eſtate: but ſome were Claſſick men, and ſome men under value.

J. Yes, *Caleb:* and you ſhall read in Authors of beſt account, that there were amongſt them men of ſmall means alſo, reckoned only by the Poll, and good for nothing, but to get children.

C. Such were uſeful however, if it were but to make Drummers and Trumpeters of, on juſt occaſion to ſound the Alarm or the Retreat; though men of higher Rank, even of the Fourth Claſs, uſually performed thoſe Offices.

J. They were, I imagine, at great charges, in giving Doles, providing Dinners, and exhibiting Shows unto the People, beſides the pains and trouble of ſaluting the Citizens, and complementing of them, and ſolliciting for their Votes, when they ſued for any Office.

C. Yes ſure: and moreover, both when they entred into an Office, and departed out of it, eſpecially if they went off with honour, they were at charges.

J. But did every Suitor for an Office obtain his deſire, if he had the moſt Voices, though not ſo many as the Law required?

C. That I do not think; but I believe it was neceſſary, that every one ſhould have as many Voices as the Law did require, before he could be choſen into Office.

J. What you ſay is very probable; and I have nothing to ſay againſt it. So farewel.

DIALOGUE XIX.

Edmund. Cyriac.

E. MUch, *Cyriac*, is talked of the *Roman Gown*, a Garment ſo proper to the *Romans*, that they are often thence called the *Gown-men*, as the *Greeks*, from their Cloak, were called

led the *Cloak-men*: can you give me any account of that ſort of Garment?

C. Somewhat, *Edmund*, I can ſay, yet very little, becauſe I have only read, or heard it ſpoken of, but never ſaw one. And firſt you may note, That the Gown was ſo proper to the Men, that it was a Note of Infamy for a Woman to wear it. Next, That it was not worn by any during the time of their Childhood, nor till they were grown up to years of diſcretion. Thirdly, That it was of divers colours, ſhewing the Wearers to be Suiters for Offices, Mourners, or Arraigned perſons: for according to the variety of their Fortunes, ſo did they change their Apparel. Fourthly, That it was of divers forms too, looſer or ſtraiter, open or cloſe, plain or embroidered, as the Age or Condition of the perſon required.

E. Young Students of Oratory being grown to mans eſtate, as alſo the Lord Generals principal Secretary, and in ſumm all Citizens of better place and eſteem did wear, I think, a white Gown, whereas the Commonalty or inferiour ſort of people wore a black one.

C. It was not ſo at firſt: but in proceſs of time it came to be ſo. But all who thought War to be preferred before Peace, did put off their Gowns, and go to their Caſſocks, eſpecially when it was neceſſary that they ſhould make them ready for Battel: and laid by all thoughts of looſe Women, to the love of whom men are oft too much addicted in times of Peace.

E. They who are ſuch, ſeldom do deeds, whereby to arrive at the honour of wearing an embroidered, purple, triumphal Gown: no more do they, who when they ſhould be arming themſelves, are deflouring Virgins.

C. Well, though I have buſineſs of mine own to do, and, as we ſay by way of Proverb, *Near is my ſhirt, but nearer my skin*, yet, if you have any buſineſs of yours to command me, you ſhall find me in a readineſs to perform it.

E. I have nothing further to trouble you withal at preſent: and beſides having through careleſneſs loſt my purſe, I muſt go ſeek it.

C. Then, my dear *Edmund*, adieu.

DIALOGUE XX.

Robert. Alexander.

R. *Alexander*, I have read, that the Kings of *Rome* had *Serjeants* to go before them carrying *Bundles of Rods*, and *Axes* tied up in thoſe bundles: had their Conſuls the like, when their Kings were driven out?

A. Yes,

A. Yes, *Robert*: they had ſo.

R. What uſe were the Rods for?

A. To puniſh ſmaller Offenders.

R. And what the Axes?

A. To puniſh greater Offenders.

R. But why were they tied in bundles?

A. Not only for conveniency of carriage, but that the anger of the Magiſtrate, who ought to do nothing raſhly, might be ſomewhat allayed, whilſt they were unbinding.

R. How long continued the Kings in their Office?

A. Their whole lives.

R. And how long the Conſuls?

A. A year: unleſs in the mean time upon any occaſion they were diſcharged of their Office. For to a Decree of the Senate, after a thing had once been propounded to the Senate, and determined by the Senate, all Officers were to yield, Dictators excepted.

R. Though the opinion of the Fore-man of the Senate was firſt asked, yet would not every man be of his opinion.

A. No, no. Sometimes they departed down from their Benches, and divided themſelves into ſides, each ſiding with him, whoſe Cauſe he favoured moſt: elſe by holding up and beckening with their hands, they ſignified what ſide they would take. And ſometimes they determined the matter by polling.

R. Happy ſure was he, who was favourably heard by the Senate, and came off well with the Senate.

A. Yes: but unhappy he, who was condemned by the Senate.

R. Were all the Senators always preſent at the Aſſemblies in the Senate-houſe?

A. They either were preſent, or elſe fined for their abſence, if they could not make a lawful excuſe for themſelves.

R. Did they always pay their Fines?

A. Either they paid them, or elſe the Common Treaſurer did ſtrain their Goods.

R. 'Tis beſt for every man to do his duty in his place: and but juſt it is that he, who neglects his duty, ſhould ſuffer for his neglect.

DIALOGUE XXI.

Rich. Simon.

R. SImon, what Officers ſucceeded *Kings* in *Rome*?

S. Conſuls were the next after Kings.

R. Were they called *Conſuls* at their firſt Inſtitution?

S. They

S. They were firſt called *Pretors*, as going before the People; after, *Judges*, becauſe of their judging the People; and laſtly, *conſuls*, as being they who ſhould conſult for the good of the People.

R. How old was every one to be before he could be made Conſul?

S. Forty three: and beſides, he was to have undergone the Office of *Quæſtor*, *Ædile*, and *Pretor*.

R. How long continued the Conſuls in their Conſulſhip?

S. They were elected Conſuls on the twenty fourth of *October*, they entred on the Conſulſhip upon the firſt of *January*; and they continued in Office a whole year, ſitting in an Ivory Chair drawn in a Chariot, and wearing a purple embroidered Gown, and being called, if they continued the whole year in their Office, *Honorary*, or Ordinary Conſuls, whereas if they died, or were depoſed in the mean time, they were called Unordinary, or *Supply* Conſuls.

R. Of the two Conſuls, which had the precedency?

S. He who had the moſt Children; or was the elder man; or at the time of the Election was pronounced before the other; being thence called the Major, or Prior Conſul.

R. What were they called after their Conſulſhip was ended?

S. They were thenceforth called *Conſular men*: and whereas formerly Deeds were dated from the founding of the City, the manner of dating was by ſubſcribing the Names of the preſent Conſuls; and even what was purpoſed againſt the next year, was ſaid to be deſigned to be, or be done, under the next Conſuls.

DIALOGUE XXII.

Edward. Benjamin.

E. HOW many years, *Ben.* did the *Cenſors* continue in their Office?

B. Ordinarily five, in which time they did once by Sacrifice purge the Roman Army, whence the ſpace of five years came to be called *Luſtrum*.

E. What Beaſts did they ſacrifice, when they muſtered the Army?

B. A Sow, a Ram, and a Bull (after they had led them thrice round the Army): whence that Sacrifice was called the Sowrambull Sacrifice.

E. What did belong to the Office of the Cenſors?

B. To value every mans Eſtate, to regiſter his Name, and place him in a fit Tribe.

E. Had

E. Had they nothing elſe to do?

B. Yes: they did inquire into mens lives, and reform their manners.

E. How did they puniſh Offenders?

B. They did depoſe Senators, and degrade others from their Tribe.

E. But whilſt we talk of other mens offences, and puniſhments, we ſhall have the Monitor by and by, with a Cenſor-like Authority, noting, and rebuking us. We had beſt to our Books.

B. I think ſo too.

DIALOGUE XXIII.

John. Allen.

J. WHat, *Allen*, belonged to the Office of the *City-Prætors?*

A. To judge, not only of Civil Caſes, but Capital alſo: and not only to leſſen the condition of the Offender, but alſo to condemn him to die.

J. In what order did they proceed in the Adminiſtration of Juſtice?

A. Firſt they did grant out an Action againſt a man; then they did paſs Judgment on him; and then ſee, and allow the delivery of the thing, or perſon, whereon Judgment had been paſſed.

J. I ſuppoſe then, that thence it was, that the *Romans* called Debtors, delivered up by the Prætor unto their Creditors to work out their debt, *Addicted Servants.*

A. I ſo imagine: and though it be ſad, that one ſhould ſell another mans life, yet ſo it came to paſs ſometimes, and from the Prætors form of Speech, when he did deliver up any Goods, that phraſe was borrowed, and came ſo to ſignifie.

J. I conceive alſo, that they judged of Cauſes only within the City, and had not Authority like that of the *City-Preſect*, who had the hearing of all Cauſes within an hundred miles of *Rome.*

A. You are in the right of it, for that.

J. But were there not Officers in *Rome* called *Proprætors?*

A. Yes: after the Prætors had born Office of Prætor in the City for one year, they went the next year into ſome *Province* to bear the ſame Office there, and then they were called Proprætors, taking their Provinces by agreement, or elſe having them by Lot.

J. I ſuppoſe, the Government, and Governours of the City did often alter.

A. Very often. And at one time they had a ſort of Magiſtrates, whom

whom they called *Sacroſancts*, whom it was ſo far from being lawful to hurt, or violently uſe, but in word, that if any violated the Law, whereby they were made ſuch, they accounted him an excommunicated perſon.

J. What were theſe called more?

A. Protectors of the Commons.

DIALOGUE XXIV.

William. Robert.

W. HAD not the *Romans* divers ſorts and degrees of *Puniſhments* among them?

R. Yes, yes. Sometimes one was fined a Sheep, and ſometimes an Ox. Sometimes again they did puniſh with loſs of life, and by whipping to death under a Croſs; ſometimes by disfranchiſement, ſometimes by baniſhing men out of the City, with more or leſs confinement to place; and ſometimes by ſetting their Goods to Sale.

W. Theſe were puniſhments for Citizens: what did they to their Servants?

R. When they deſigned not to kill them, but only to ſhame them, they did make them carry a heavy wooden grain'd piece of Timber like a Fork, upon their ſhoulders round about the City, and prick them forward with Goads, if they hung back: which Goads it booted the Servants little to kick againſt; for they were but pricked ſo much the more, till their backs were ſo full of holes, that they looked like Sieves, and themſelves were called *Hangmanly Sieves.*

W. But you have not reckoned up yet all the ways of puniſhing, or tormenting amongſt the *Romans*, unleſs I be miſtaken.

R. No, no. Sometimes they put thieviſh Cooks in the Little Eaſe; Parricides they ſewed up in a Leathern Sack, together with a Serpent, an Ape, a Cock, and a Dog, and threw them into the Sea. To draw out Confeſſions they did put men to the Rack, and with hot Plates and Iron Pincers burn and tear off their fleſh from their ſides. And ſometimes, unleſs they were redeemed by their Friends, and *ſaved* (as we ſay Proverbially) *from the Gallows*, they were tumbled down the Tarpeian Rock, and had their Necks broken; or elſe they were by a Hook, thruſt into their Throats, dragged to the Gemonian Stairs, and there, having their Thighs firſt broken, were burnt to death in a Coat dawb'd on the inſide with Pitch and Brimſtone.

W. But did they not ſometimes reſerve Offenders to be puniſhed in ſuch ways as might afford them ſome pleaſure?

R. They did ſo: and to that end they ſometimes condemned them to the Fencing-School, and ſometimes to the Beaſts; to fight with them for their lives.

W. Did they not ſometimes puniſh their Slaves with hard labours?

R. Yes, yes. Sometimes they ſent them to the Correction-houſe; ſometimes they condemned them to the drawing of Water; or to the Mines, having Shackles about their Legs, to prevent their running away, and being branded with a Brand burnt into their Hand, Brow, or Shoulder, that they might be known again, if they did run away. Whence they were called *Branded Slaves*, and *Stigmatized Rogues*.

W. To puniſh ſeverely, was the way to have their Laws kept more duly: for, nothing more ſpoils a City, than fooliſh pity.

DIALOGUE XXV.

Ulpian. Papinian.

U. DID the *Roman* Magiſtrates in their Judicatures proceed only according to written Law?

P. No, *Ulpian*, ſometimes they judged according to Equity.

U. Did they always adminiſter Juſtice ſitting on the Bench?

P. No, ſometimes they held a private Seſſions.

U. Did they always judge themſelves in Perſon?

P. No, ſometimes they judged by Proxy.

U. Whom might they cite into their Courts?

P. Such as were Offenders againſt the Laws, or had Actions taken out againſt them, or were Proſecutors of Capital Offenders, or were Witneſſes in Civil Cauſes.

U. What if a mans Caſe were good?

P. Then they acquitted him.

U. What if his Caſe were bad?

P. Then he was caſt in his Suit.

U. I hope, they condemned no man before they had heard him ſpeak for himſelf.

P. No, they were far from that kind of injuſtice: nor did they permit, that any ſhould work under-hand, circumvent, or oppreſs another with falſe Judgment procured by Bribery, or Confederacy, that he might be condemned being innocent.

U. It had been an unworthy thing for any Citizen, whether by Birth, or by Donation, or any, who had rendred his Name to the Magiſtrate, to go about any ſuch thing.

P. And yet, as the World goes, ſuch things would be done, were it not free both to aſſemble the People, and to make Speeches

ches to the People, to give their Votes, by word of mouth, or in Tablets of Wood, that Laws might be made to prevent ſuch things.

DIALOGUE XXVI.

Samuel. Arthur.

S. I Think, *Arthur*, it was a cuſtom in times of Victory, to preſent him that was Commander in Chief in the Army with *Coronets of Gold.*

A. Yes, *Sam.* it was ſo for ſome time: but afterwards inſtead of thoſe Coronets, they preſented him with *Crown-money.*

S. It ſhould ſeem that after a Victory the Goods of the Conquered were expoſed to publick Sale.

A. Yes, and of others too: for I have read of a Sale of *Ceſar*'s Goods, who yet was never conquered.

S. And I have read too of an Auction, wherein a King ſitting in his Purple, with his Scepter, and other Princely Ornaments, was ſet to Sale.

A. In ſuch caſes the Buyer had need take care, that he buy not of one, that has no power to ſell.

S. Yes indeed, it ſtood the Buyer upon it to look to that: but Goods ſet to Sale, it was free for any man to buy, that would ſhew he had a mind to buy them.

A. And if any man had a mind to redeem the Goods, he might do it, ſo be that he did put in Bands, and gave Security to anſwer the matter.

S. I ſhould have no mind to buy a Pig in a Poke.

A. But I hope you would be very willing to buy a Pig with a Pudding in the belly of it.

S. Yes, at the price of a ſimple Pig, elſe I ſhould be a ſimple Fellow, and deſerve to be begg'd for a fool.

DIALOGUE XXVII.

Robert. Andrew.

R. I Suppoſe, *Andrew*, that there were ſeveral ways and forms, by which the *Romans*, when they died, conveyed their Eſtates to others after them.

A. Yes, *Robert*; ſome they made Heirs, and ſome they made but Legatees: and their Wills they ſometimes made in writing in an Aſſembly of the People, namely, in times of Peace: Sometimes by word of mouth in the preſence of three or four Souldiers,

namely, in time of War, and moſt particularly when they were ready to give Battel.

R. Did they always directly give their Eſtates to them, whom they intended their Heirs?

A. No: ſometimes they made them over to an Heir in Truſt, who ſhould after reſign them unto the true and lawful Heir.

R. Did they always make one certain perſon ſole Heir to the whole Eſtate?

A. No, no: they did ſometimes make ſeveral perſons Heirs to ſome part of their Eſtates, as themſelves pleaſed, one perhaps to eleven parts of his Goods, another to one quarter of his Goods, a third to the four and twentieth part, and a fourth had the threeſcore and twelfth part.

R. But might they give away what proportion of their Eſtates they pleaſed in Legacies?

A. I cannot tell that: but there was a Law made, whereby it was unlawful for any to give away in way of Legacy unto any, except to the Kinſmen of him, which manumiſed him, or ſome other perſons, above fifty Shillings.

R. Though it ſeem reaſonable, that every man ſhould do with his own, what he pleaſeth, yet it is not fit his Heir ſhould be wronged over-much.

DIALOGUE XXVIII.

Hottoman. Paul.

H. WEre Judges always amongſt the *Romans* choſen by Vote?

P. No: ſometimes they choſe them by Lot.

H. Did they allow of it, when a man entred an Action againſt any, to forge a Crime againſt him never committed by him?

P. By no means: on the contrary rather they ordained, that whoſoever ſhould forge an Accuſation againſt another, ſhould be burnt in his Forehead in token of Infamy. Nay (ſo much they loved plain and down-right dealings) they thought not well of him, who ſhould either play the falſe Proctor, or ſo much as deſiſt in his Accuſation.

H. What if a man, being cited into a Court, to anſwer for indirect means uſed in the attaining of an Office, did plead ſickneſs for his not appearing?

P He underwent a Penalty.

H. Whether a man were fined in any Summ of Money, or owed Money upon Bargain, or upon Uſe, how came he diſcharged of his debt?

P. By

P. By paying what he was fined, or had promiſed, and repaying what he had borrowed, and that either in coyned Money, or in Bullion; the firſt by numbering it, the ſecond by weighing it.

H. But what if a man had not ready money to pay?

P. He might ſecure it to his Creditor by mortgaging of Land to pay it, if his Creditor would take Land for Security.

H. I ſuppoſe, there was none, who put Money to Uſe, but would be willing to that.

P. I cannot tell. A man may be cheated even that, as well as any other way, if he deal with a Knave, as they, who do put Money to Uſe, do find by very frequent experience.

DIALOGUE XXIX.

Nicolas. Valentine.

N. THE more, *Valentine*, that I conſider the practices of the *Romans*, the more Equity I ſtill find in their Judiciary proceedings.

V. I am of your mind, *Nicolas*: for what can be more equal, than that after Citation of any one into Court, and both Parties had made their appearance in the Court, before they did produce Witneſſes, Sureties ſhould be put in, by the Defendant, to pay his Fine, and by the Plaintiff, to ſtand to the Verdict of the Court; and by both, that, unleſs they did make an end betwixt themſelves, the Party caſt in the Suit, when the Charges of the Suit were taxed, ſhould defray them.

N. And it was very equal, was it not? that when one was accuſed of a Crime, the Judge, that ſat upon Life and Death, ſhould put the Accuſer to it to ſwear, that he did not accuſe maliciouſly.

V. Yes it was ſo: as alſo that when any did implead another, and enter an Action againſt him, and he had demanded Sureties of him for appearance, he ſhould accordingly enter into Bond for his appearance.

N. But moſt equal it was, that, if the Caſe were dubious, ſo that there were need of longer time to conſider, before Execution, to ſeize on a mans Goods were granted out, the Priſoner ſhould be reprieved, and Sentence put off till the third day.

V. So it was: and where there was ſuch caution in proceeding, and ſuch equity in judging, none needed to fear, upon good cauſe, to offer to wager a Suit in Law with any; nor any, to wager a Suit in Law with another; or to come to it, and in open Court argue the Caſe *pro* and *con*; or to bind himſelf either to ſtand to the Judgment of the Court, or to pay what he ſhould be adjudged.

N. I wiſh there were the like Equity in all Courts.
V. You may wiſh it: but you ſhall never find it.

DIALOGUE XXX.

Henry. Urian.

H. I Prithee, *Urian*, give me ſome account of the Cuſtoms of the *Romans* in making Peace or War.

U. I will do it, *Harry*, with all my heart, if you have leiſure to hear me. Firſt then, when they made a Truce, a Herald took a Stone in his hand, and, in the Name of the State, took a ſolemn Oath, That he did deal ſincerely in the making of that League; and then he did caſt the Stone out of his hand, wiſhing that himſelf might periſh, and be caſt out of all he had, if he dealt fallaciouſly, as that ſtone was caſt out of his hands.

H. But what did they do, when a League could not be made, but they muſt needs come to a Battel?

U. When the Captain had ſounded a Call, and the Souldiers, who ſerved under that Captain, had ſtood a while in readineſs, after that they had firſt made a great ſhout for Battel, and had ruſtled a while with their Armor, they did joyn Battel.

H. I pray you, what Ceremony was uſed, when they were to remove their Camp?

U. They did give a great ſhout, in token that the Souldiers ſhould truſs up their Bag and Baggage, and then they marched away readily.

H. Were any excuſed from ſerving in the Wars?

U. Yes, Old Souldiers diſcharged of their Service, as having ſerved out their time in the Wars, unleſs the Lord General called them forth again in caſe of great need, when the buſineſs was not ſo fit to be truſted to the skill, or Valour of freſh-water Souldiers, but was to be managed by old beaten Souldiers, who would not keep out of danger as far as they could, but fight it out ſtoutly, till it came to the laſt puſh.

H. It were not indeed to be expected, that men, in their initiation into War, ſhould ſo gallantly behave themſelves, as thoſe, who by long experience had been inured thereunto. But I am afraid, that by my skipping thus from one thing to another, I quite tire you, therefore I will give over.

U. You are very welcome to ask, what you pleaſe, and diſcourſe as long as you pleaſe. And I am ready to ſerve you in any thing within my skill and power.

DIA-

DIALOGUE XXXI.

Theodore. Benjamin.

T. A Prince, when his great Friend had deceived him, was ſometimes forced, for want of ſuccour, to ſhut up himſelf for ſecurity in a walled Town: what courſe did the *Romans* then take for the conquering of that place?

B. Sometimes they aſſailed it by open Force, environing it with a deep Ditch, and a Rampire; approaching the Walls under Muſcles, and Target-Fences, and moveable Turrets, and battering it with Baliſts, Scorpions, and Rams: and ſometimes by covert ways, working under ground, till they had digged through the Walls, and were got into the Town: and ſometimes when neither Force nor Cunning could prevail, they tired out the Citizens with the troubles of a long Siege, or pined them out with want of Proviſions.

T. In the mean time they put themſelves to great Charges to carry on the War.

B. Yes ſure: He that would caſt up the account of their Charges with the Pen, would undertake a hard task. But when once a deſign is begun, it ſeems a diſparagement to give it over, without accompliſhing what was deſigned.

T. Wiſe therefore was the man that ſaid, With good advice make War.

B. And unwiſe are they, that follow not his counſel.

DIALOGUE XXXII.

Cyriac. Edward.

C. THE Warlike Diſcipline of the *Romans*, as I have heard, was very ſtrict. That ſure could not be preſerved, but by ſevere puniſhments inflicted on Offenders againſt it. Can you, *Edward*, give me any account of thoſe puniſhments?

E. Some, *Cyriac*, I think I can. For leſſer faults they puniſht them, either with caſhiering or ſtopping of their Pay (the Wages of him that loſt his Pay going into the Exchequer) or by forcing them to give up their Iron-headed Spear, (which was no leſs a diſgrace, than it was a grace to be honoured with a Spear without a head); alſo by taking their Wheat from them, and making them eat nothing but Barley bread (if it were a whole Cohort, which had loſt their Banners); or by taking their Girdles from them (if they were Centurions that had offended); or making them ſtand bare-footed before the Lord Generals Pavilion with long Poles in their hands (which is ſomewhat like

our doing Penance in a white Sheet) or by letting them blood in one of their Arms, if through heat of blood they had been too adventurous.

C. What were then their puniſhments for greater faults?

E. Sometimes they did beat them with Cudgels; and ſometimes they did ſcourge them with Rods.

C. What were the faults that were thought to deſerve Cudgelling?

E. They were theſe; not to ſend about the Ticket, wherein was the Watch-word; to forſake their place, where they were appointed to keep Watch; to ſteal any thing out of the Camp; to bear falſe witneſs againſt their Fellows; to abuſe their bodies by Women; to commit the ſame fault thrice.

C. What were the faults, for which they were whipped with Rods?

E. Breaking their Ranks by going out of Order.

C. Was that ſo great a fault?

E. Yes ſure in their eſteem: for they were ſometimes for it ſold for Bond-ſlaves, beheaded, or hanged.

C. What if a whole Legion offended?

E. They were puniſhed by Decimation, every tenth man by lot being cudgelled. or otherwiſe puniſhed, the reſt eſcaping with little, or no puniſhment.

DIALOGUE XXXIII.

Rupert. Lewis.

R. I Imagine, *Lewis*, that as the *Romans* were very ſevere in their Military puniſhments, ſo they were no leſs generous in their *Rewards*: can you give me any account of what they did in that point?

L. I think, *Rupert*, I can. They rewarded both the General and his Souldiers with Rewards ſuitable to their Merits.

R. What Rewards did they honour the General withal?

L. Firſt, with the Name of Imperator confirmed unto him in the City by the Senate, after it had been given him in the Field by the Souldiers, after the ſlaughter of ten thouſand Enemies, or taking of ſome Great Place. Secondly, with the appointment of a ſolemn Proceſſion, wherein for ſeveral days Prayers, and Sacrifices were offered to the Gods in his behalf, which was done upon his ſending Letters dight with Laurel to the Senate. Thirdly, at his coming home they honoured him, upon leſs Occaſions with an Ovation (wherein he ſacrificed to the Gods a Sheep); and upon greater, with a Triumph (wherein he ſacrificed a Bull). And as at his Ovation he wore only a plain

Purple

Purple Gown, and a Garland of Myrtle, and came walking on foot, or riding on Horſe-back, being met only by the Commonalty of *Rome*, and the Gentlemen without the Senators: ſo at his Triumphing he wore an embroidered Gown; came riding in a Chariot, with a great Crown of Gold held over his Head; and was met by the Senators themſelves, with the beſt of the *Romans*; after which he did hang up his Royal Spoils in a Temple conſecrated to *Jupiter Feretrius*. Fourthly, they did to his Honour erect Trophies of Braſs or Marble, with Inſcriptions upon them, to perpetuate the Honour of his Victory, and ſometimes Statues, and Columns, and Triumphal Arches.

R. Theſe were noble Rewards indeed enough to ſtir up active Spirits to brave Atchievements. But what had the Souldiers?

L. They were honourably rewarded alſo. For ſometimes they had Offices beſtowed on them, as the place of a Centurion, Prefect, or Decurio; ſometimes their Pay was increaſed; ſometimes the Spoils taken in War were ſhared among them; and ſometimes they received Military Gifts of ſeveral ſorts according to their deſerts.

R. I pray you, what were they?

L. In former Ages they received a certain meaſure of Corn called *Adorea*: afterwards they were honoured with Bracelets for the Hand-wriſt; Chains to wear about their Necks; Horſe-Trappings; a Spear without any Iron at the end of it; and Crowns of ſeveral ſorts.

R. What, I pray you, were thoſe ſeveral ſorts of Crowns?

L. Firſt, not to mention the Triumphal Crown of Gold ſent by the Senate to the Lord General in Honour of his Triumph; nor the Oval Crown made of Myrtle-tree, and worn by him at his Ovation; nor the Obſidional Crown made of Graſs (thence called the *Graſſie Crown*) and given by the Souldiers to the Lord General, when they were freed from a Siege: To that Souldier who had ſaved a Citizens life there was given a *Civick Crown*; To him who firſt ſcaled the Enemies Walls there was preſented a *Mural Crown*, repreſenting the Battlements of a Wall; On him, who firſt entred the Enemies Tents was beſtowed a *Camp-Crown*, bearing the reſemblance of a Bulwark, and thence called the *Bulwark-Crown*. He who firſt entred the Enemies Ship, was honoured with a *Naval Crown* pourtrayed with many Shipbeaks, and thence called the *Beaked Crown*.

R. But was the Civick Crown beſtowed only upon Souldiers?

L. At firſt it was ſo: but afterwards it was alſo beſtowed on the Lord General, if he ſpared a Roman Citizen, when he had power to kill him.

R. Let

R. Let me trouble you but with one queſtion or two more, and then I ſhall have done troubling of you.

L. Ask, what you pleaſe, and welcome.

R. I obſerve, that in Races, and the like Maſteries, he that was overcome, did gather ſome of the Graſs of the place, and give it unto the Conqueror, as an acknowledgment of his being conquered: in what Cuſtom of the *Romans* was that Action founded?

L. In this, That the Souldiers freed from a Siege, by preſenting to the General a Crown made of the Graſs, growing in the place, where they were beſieged, did thereby yield up unto him their Right in that place. And thence came it to paſs, that he that would confeſs himſelf worſted in any Conteſt, did make his Confeſſion in this Form of words, *I give you Graſs.*

R. I thank you for all this trouble, and am your obliged Servant.

L. I am glad I have been able to ſerve you in any thing. Farewel.

CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

Of Variation of Phraſes.

TO enable the Scholar the better to make uſe of his Phraſes, as alſo to enrich him with the greater ſtore of them, *Variation of the Phraſes* will be very conducing. Of this therefore let the Teacher firſt give him ſome *Rules*, and then put him upon the practice.

For Rules, he may furniſh him with them according to his diſcretion out of his own Obſervation: Or if he think good, he may make uſe of this Collection.

Rules of Variation.

Firſt, a *Verb Active* may be varied by a *Verb Paſſive*, by putting the Nominative Caſe of the Active Verb into the Ablative with *à* or *ab*; and the Accuſative into the Nominative, making the Verb agree with it in Number and Perſon: as,

Ego lego Virgilium.
Virgilius legitur à me.

Sometimes the Nominative before the Verb Active, may be the Dative after the Paſſive: as,

Non me ullus intelligit. *Id vitium nullus notaverat.*
Non intelligor ulli. *Id vitium nulli notatum erat.*

But this is moſt uſed in Poets.

If the Verb Active govern a Dative Caſe of the Perſon, then it will not be convenient to vary the Nominative Caſe before it by a Dative Caſe after the Verb Paſſive; becauſe then there will be two Datives together: And therefore we vary not, *Referam tibi gratiam* by *Referetur mihi tibi gratia*, but by *Referetur tibi à me gratia.*

The Dative Caſe after *videor* [I ſeem] is not variable by an Ablative Caſe with a Prepoſition. *Vide Voſſ.* Lat. Gram. p. 51.

2. A *Verb Paſſive* may be varied by a *Verb Active*, by putting the Nominative Caſe into the Accuſative, and the Dative or Ablative into the Nominative, and making the Verb agree with it in Number and Perſon: as,

Viris bonis honeſta petuntur. *Ille ab his laudatur.*
Viri boni honeſta petunt. *Hi illum laudant.*
Ab hoſtibus conſtanter pugnatur. *Occurritur nobis à doctis.*
Hoſtes conſtanter pugnant. *Docti nobis occurrunt.*

3. The

3. The *Ablative Caſe Abſolute* may be varied by putting the Ablative into the Nominative, and turning the Participle into a Verb with ſome of theſe Particles, *dum, cùm, quando, ſi*, in ſuch Mood as the Particle uſed therewith, requires: as,

Rege veniente
Dum veniret Rex } *hoſtes fugerunt.*

Imperante Auguſto
Cùm imperabat Auguſtus } *natus eſt Chriſtus.*

Superbo regnante
Quando Superbus regnabat } *In* Italiam *venit.*

Note, If there be no *Participle* expreſſed together with the Ablative Caſe Abſolute, then the Participle *ente* or *exiſtente* is underſtood, and the variation will be made by *ſum, fui*, &c. as.

Me [*exiſtente*] *duce*
Si ego dux fuero } *vinces.*

Credo pudicitiam { Saturno [*ente*] *rege* / *Quando* Saturnus *rex erat.* } *moratam in terris.*

4. The *Nominative Caſe* with his Verb and Particle may be varied by turning the Nominative Caſe into the Ablative; and (the Particle being put away) the Verb into a Participle agreeing with it: as,

Poſtquam arbor dejicitur.
Arbore dejectâ.

5. An *Adjective* that hath *res* expreſſed with it, may be varied by putting away *res*, and putting the Adjective into the Neuter Gender: as,

Deus { *res omnes* / *omnia* } *ex nihilo creavit.*

6. An *Adjective of the Neuter Gender* whoſe Subſtantive is *res* underſtood, may be varied by expreſſing *res*, and putting the Adjective into the Gender agreeing with it: as,

Unum quodque
Rem unam quamque } *ſuo diſignare nomine.*
Id forſan difficile
Forſan res ea difficilis } *eſt.*

7. The *latter of two Subſtantives* being a Genitive Caſe of Poſſeſſion, may be varied by an Adjective Poſſeſſive agreeing in Caſe with the former Subſtantive; and *vice verſâ*: as,

Domûs

Domus patris, paterna domus.
Herilis filius, filius heri.
So, *Mulier monſtroſa; monſtrum mulieris.*
Scelus viri; vir ſceleſte. Plaut.

See Treat. of Partic. c. 64. r. 1. n. 4.

8. An *Adjective Abſolute in the Neuter Gender* with his Genitive Caſe, may be varied by putting the Subſtantive of the Genitive Caſe into the Caſe of the Adjective; and the Adjective of the Neuter Gender into the Gender of the Subſtantive: as,

Hoc noctis; Hâc nocte.
Per { *diverſa terrarum* / *terras diverſas* } *diſtractus eſt.*

9. An *Adjective with his Subſtantive* wherewith he agrees in Caſe, may many times be elegantly varied by putting the Adjective into the Neuter Gender (if it already be not) and the Subſtantive into the Genitive Caſe: as,

Ne { *eum quidem leporem* / *id quidem leporis* } *habuerunt.* Cic.
Mihi { *hoc negotium* / *hoc negotii* } *dedêre.* Ter.
Quis hic homo? Quid hoc hominis? Ter.
Huic { *alia merces* / *aliud mercedis* } *erit.* Virg.
Per { *gentes terrâſque diverſas* / *diverſa gentium terrarúmq;* } *litabant.* Flor.

10. The *Accuſative Caſe before the Infinitive Mood* may be varied by turning the Accuſative into the Nominative, and the Infinitive Mood into the Indicative or Subjunctive with *quod* or *ut*, accordingly as thoſe Particles require: as,

Te incolumem rediiſſe / *Quod tu redieris incolumis* } *gaudeo.*
Te abire / *Ut tu abeas* } *jubeo.*

Note, The Infinitive Mood may not be reſolved into another Mood with *quod* or *ut* indifferently: but ſometimes by *quod*, ſometimes by *ut*. *See Etym. Partic. c. 75. r. 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8.*

11. The Nominative Caſe with his Verb having *quod* or *ut* with it, may be varied by putting away *quod* and *ut*; and turning the Nominative Caſe into the Accuſative, and the Verb into the Infinitive Mood: as,

Quod

Quod tu bene vales } *gaudeo.*
Te bene valere }
Ut tu fabulam agas } *volo.*
Te agere fabulam }

12. The Verb *habeo* may be varied by the Verb *ſum*, by putting that word into the Dative Caſe, which was the Nominative before *habeo*: and that into the Nominative, which after *habeo* was the Accuſative: as,

Ego habeo domi patrem.
Eſt mihi domi pater.
Non habeo ego argentum.
Non eſt mihi argentum.

13. The *Genitive Caſe* governed of a *Noun Partitive*, may be varied by a Prepoſition, and ſuch Caſe as he governs; and *vice verſâ*: as,

Quorum } *alter te ſcientiâ augere poteſt.* Cic.
E quibus }
Major juvenum; *De juvenibus major.* Hor.
Multæ iſtarum arborum } *manu mtâ ſatæ ſunt.* Cic.
Ex arboribus iſtis multæ }

14. The *Genitive Caſe after the Superlative Degree* may be varied by *è*, *ex*, with an Ablative; or *inter* with an Accuſative Caſe: as,

Virgilius *doctiſſimus* { *Poëtarum.* *ex Poëtis.* *inter Poëtas.*

15. The *Infinitive Mood Active* after a Verb of *Motion*, or denoting any *Intention*, may be varied ſeveral ways. For inſtance, *Venio ſalutare matrem* may be varied, (1) By the firſt Supine; as, *Venio ſalutatum matrem.* (2) By a Participle in *rus*; as, *Venio ſalutaturus matrem.* (3) By a Gerund in *di* with *ergô*, *gratiâ*, *causâ*; as, *Matrem ſalutandi causâ venio.* (4) By a Gerund in *dum* with a Prepoſition; as, *Venio ad ſalutandum matrem.* (5) By a Gerundive with *ergô*, *gratiâ*, *causâ*; as, *Matris ſalutandæ gratiâ venio.* (6) By a Gerundive with a Prepoſition; as, *Ad matrem ſalutandam venio.* (7) By a Subjunctive Mood with *ut*; as, *Matrem ut ſalutem venio.*

Note, Every one of theſe ways of varying may be varied by all, or the moſt of the other ways: as the firſt Supine by the Infinitive Mood; Participle in *rus*; Gerund, Gerundive; Verb. So the Participle in *rus* may be varied by the Infinitive Mood; firſt Supine, Gerund, Gerundive, Verb. So the Gerund in *dum* by

by the Infinitive Mood; firſt Supine; Participle in *rus*; Gerund in *di* with *causâ*, &c. Gerundive with Prepoſition; Verb with *ut*. So Gerundive by Infinitive Mood, &c. So Verb of Subjunctive Mood with *ut*, by Infinitive Mood, &c.

16. The *Infinitive Mood Paſſive after an Adjective* may be varied ſeveral ways; for inſtance, *dignus eſt amari*, may be varied, (1) By the latter Supine; as, *Dignus eſt amatu.* (2) By a Verb of the Subjunctive Mood with *ut*; as, *Dignus eſt, ut ametur*: or *qui*, as, *dignus eſt qui ametur, quem ames.* (3) By a Noun of a cognate original and ſignification; as, *Dignus eſt amore.*

Note, Every one of theſe ways of varying may be varied by the other. The Supine by the Infinitive Mood, the Subjunctive Mood with his Particles, and the Noun. The Subjunctive with his Particle by the Infinitive Mood and the Supine, And the Noun by the other ways of varying before mentioned.

Note alſo, That the uſing of the Infinitive Mood after the Adjective, is Poetical or Hiſtorical.

17. The *Comparative Degree* may be varied
(1) By his *Poſitive* with *magis* and *quàm*: as,
Vilius argentum eſt auro.
Magis vile eſt argentum, quàm aurum,
(2) By his *Poſitive* with *Comparative* Particles, *tam, æquè, adeo, ita, ſic, perinde*, anſwered by *quàm, ac, atque, ut*, having ſome Negative Particle before the former of them, after theſe Examples.

[*Virtus eſt auro pretioſior.*]
Aurum non tam eſt pretioſum, quàm virtus.
Aurum non tam eſt pretioſum, ut virtus.
Aurum non æquè eſt pretioſum, quàm virtus.
Aurum non æquè eſt pretioſum, ac virtus.
Aurum non æquè eſt pretioſum atque virtus.
Aurum non adeo eſt pretioſum, ut virtus.
Aurum non ita eſt pretioſum, ut virtus.
Aurum non perinde eſt pretioſum, ac virtus.
Aurum non perinde eſt pretioſum, quàm virtus.
Aurum non perinde eſt pretioſum, ut virtus.
Aurum non ſic pretioſum eſt, ut virtus.
So, *Aurum haud tam,* [*æquè, adeo, ita, ſic, perinde*] *eſt pretioſum, quàm,* [*ac, atque, ut*] *virtus.*

18. The Superlative Degree may be varied
(1) By his Comparative Degree: as,
Plato erat vir omnium elegantiſſimus
is variable

1. Affir-

1. Affirmatively.

Plato vir erat cæteris [aliis] *omnibus elegantior.*
Plato vir erat, quàm *cæteri omnes elegantior.*

2. Negatively.

Plato vir erat, quo non alius [alter] *elegantior.*
Haud erat quiſquam [ullus] *Platone elegantior.*
Nemo erat Platone [*quàm Plato*] *elegantior.*
Nihil [*haud quicquam*] *erat Platone elegantius.*

3. Interrogatively.

Quis Platone erat elegantior?
Quid erat Platone elegantius?

(2) By his Poſitive with Comparative Particles, *tam, perinde, æquè, adeo, ita, ſic,* anſwered by *quàm, ac, atque, ut.*

1. Negatively.

Nemo erat tam elegans, quàm, [*ut*] *Plato.*
Nemo perinde erat elegans, ac, [*atque, ut*] *Plato.*
Haud erat quiſquam æquè elegans quàm, [*ac, atque, ut*] *Plato.*
Haud erat quiſquam adeo elegans, ut Plato.
Nemo ſic [*ita*] *erat elegans, ut Plato.*

2. Interrogatively.

Quis tam [*perinde, æquè, adeo, ſic, ita*] *erat elegans, quàm* [*ac atque, ut*] *Plato.*

(3) By his Conjugate Subſtantive: as,

Summa erat Platonis Elegantia.
Plato elegantiâ omnes vicit [*præſtitit; ſuperavit.*]
Platonem elegantiâ ſuperavit nemo.
Plato erat à nemine elegantiâ ſuperatus.
Quem non elegantiâ ſuperavit Plato.
Plato nulli elegantiâ ceſſit [*ſecundus erat.*]
Platoni quis non elegantiâ ceſſit?
Plato erat omnibus elegantiâ ſuperior.
Plato erat nullo elegantiâ inferior.
O ſingularem Platonis elegantiam!
O, quanta erat Platonis elegantia!
Quem cum Platone poſſis elegantiâ æquare?
Plato pene ipſa erat elegantia.
Plato elegantiæ omnis erat antiſtes [*exemplum, idea.*]
Platonis erat incredibilis elegantia.

19. *Single words* may be varied ſeveral ways:

1. By their own ſeveral Caſes, and that——

(1.) Without any variation of the whole ſentence according to ſeveral Grammar Rules in part already touched upon, and yet further obſervable by the heeding Reader.

Eſt

Eſt ubi in Dativum vertitur, &c.
Opus autem adjectivè, &c.

Communis, alienus, &c.
Magnitudinis menſura, &c.
Nomina diverſitatis, &c.

Infinitum quoque utrinque, &c.
Vertitur hic Genitivus, &c.
Æſtimo vel Genitivum, &c.
At miſereor & miſereſco, &c.
Reminiſcor, obliviſcor, &c.
Potior aut Genitivo, &c.
Ex his quædam efferuntur, &c.
Verba comparandi, &c.
Hæc variam habent, &c.
Dicimus, tempero, moderor tibi, &c.
At ex his quædam cum aliis caſibus, &c.

Laus & vituperium, &c.
Quædam ex his quæ ſimilitudinem, &c.
Natus, commodus, &c.
Adjectiva quæ ad copiam, &c.
Horum nonnulla, &c.

Pauca ex his mutant, &c.
Hunc Accuſativum mutant, &c.
Rogandi verba interdum, &c.
Veſtiendi verba interdum, &c.
Valeo etiam interdum, &c.
Ex quibus quædam, &c.
Vertitur hic Ablativus, &c.
Verbis quibuſdam additur, &c.
Paſſivis additur Ablat. &c.
Poeticè Infinitivus Modus, &c.
Vertuntur Gerundii voces, &c.
Quæ ſignific. partem temp. &c.
Dicimus etiam in paucis, &c.

(2.) With ſome light variation of the whole Sentence: as,
Sapientia rerum omnium præſtantiſſima eſt.
Sapientiæ præ rebus omnibus ſumma eſt præſtantia.
Sapientiæ / *Sapientiam* } *non omnes præterea in univerſo res præſtant.*
O ſapientia! quænam è rebus omnibus æquè ac tu præſtans eſt?
Sapientia inter omnes uſpiam in orbe toto res nihil eſt præſtantius.

2. By their *Synonymas*: as,
Enſis, gladius. Amo, diligo. Sæpe, frequenter.

3. By their *Equipollents*; *nullus, non ullus.*
Aliquis, non nemo: aliquando, nonnunquam: rarò, non ſæpe: doctus, non indoctus: bonus, minimè malus.

4. By their *Periphraſes*: as,
Philoſophus: Vir ſapientiæ ſtudioſus.
Ovidius: Sulmonenſis Vates.
Occidere; *Vitâ privare.*
Rhetorica; *Ars ornatè dicendi.*

5. By an Enallage.
(1.) Of a Noun.
1. For a *Verb*: as, *Judicent alii*; *Aliorum eſto judicium.*
2. For a *Participle*: as, *Hoc* { *te impellente* / *tuo impulſu* } *fecit.*
3. For an *Adverb*: as, { *Lætè* / *Lætus* } *iſtuc audio.*

(2.) Of a *Verb* for a Noun: as,

Scientia tua } *nihil eſt.*
Scire tuum }

(3.) Of a Participle for a Verb: as,

Conſuli } *opus eſt.*
Conſulto }

(4.) Of an *Infinitive Mood* for the Indicative: as,

Ex illo { *fluebant* / *fluere* } *res Danaûm.*

(5.) Of a *Preſent Tenſe* for a Preterimperfect Tenſe: as,

Tu ſi hic { *eſſes* / *ſis* } *aliter* { *ſentires.* / *ſentias.* }

(6.) Of the *Plural Number* for the Singular: as,

Ego populo impoſui.
Nos populo impoſuimus.

(7.) Of the *Second Perſon* for the third with his Nominative Caſe: as,

Qui unum nôrit, omnes nôrit.
Unum nôris, omnes nôris.

6. By Tropes of Rhetorick.

(1.) A Metonymie of { *Belli* / *Martis* } *vis perculit.* the *Efficient*: as, *Eos*

Or of the { *Sunt* Itali *teſtes.* / *Teſtis eſt* Italia. } *Subject*: as,

Or of the { *Cedat paci bellum.* / *Cedant arma togæ.* } *Adjunct*: as,

(2.) An *Irony* of the contrary: as,

Vir male rem negligenter geſſiſti.
Bone vir curâſti probè.

(3.) A Metaphor: as,

Omnes { *excitantur* / *incenduntur* } *ad ſtudia gloriâ.*

(4.) A *Synecdoche* of the *Member*: as,

In magno periculo eram, quod { *eadem urbe* / *iiſdem mœnibus* } *contineremur.*

Or of the *Whole*: as, { *Imperium Romanum* / *Orbis terrarum* } *ardet bello.*

Or of the { *Interfector* / *Parricida* } *civium interficitur.* *Species*: as,

Orator eloquentiſſimus; *Alter* Cicero.

Or of the *Genus*: as, *Perdidimus* { *Catilinam.* / *hominem.* }

Venientibus malis obſtat { *Fortitudo.* / *Virtus.* }

20. *Sen-*

20. *Sentences* may be alſo varied by ſeveral ways.

1. By turning the *Affirmative* Speech into a *Negative*, and contrariwiſe a *Negative* into an *Affirmative*: as,

1. *Avaritia vitiorum omnium eſt teterrimum.*
   Nullum eſt vitium tetrius quàm avaritia.
   Eſt vir prudentiâ ſingulari.
   Non vulgaris eſt viri prudentia.
2. *Non parva eſt peccandi illecebra impunitas.*
   Impunitas peccandi maxima eſt illecebra.
   Nihil meum eſt, quod auferri poteſt.
   Meum id omne eſt, quod auferri non poteſt.

2. By turning the *Aſſertive* Speech into an *Interrogative*, and contrariwiſe *Interrogative* into *Aſſertive*: as,

(1.) *Avaritia vitium eſt ſœdiſſimum.*
   Quod vitium ſœdius eſt avaritiâ.
   Nihil eſt abſurdius, quàm, quo minus viæ reſtat, eò plus viatici quærere.
   Poteſt quicquam eſſe abſurdius, quàm quo minus,——
   Acerba audire tolerabilius eſt, quàm videre.
   Annon eſt tolerabilius acerba audire, quàm videre?
(2.) *Annon ſunt incerti bellorum omnium exitus?*
   Omnium bellorum exitus incerti ſunt.
   Id ne appellandum eſt onus, quod cum lætitiâ feras?
   Onus non eſt appellandum, quod cum lætitiâ feras.

3. By turning *Aſſertive* Speeches into *Admirative*, and contrariwiſe *Admirative* into *Aſſertive* Speeches: as,

(1.) *Omnia ſunt miſera in bellis civilibus.*
   Quàm miſera ſunt omnia in bellis civilibus!
(2.) *Quàm timeo quorſum evades!*
   Quorſum evadas magnopere timeo.

4. By turning *Aſſertive* Speeches into *Exclamations*, and contrariwiſe *Exclamatory* into *Aſſertory* Speeches: as,

(1.) *Homo eſt admirandâ ſcientiâ.*
   O admirandam hominis ſcientiam!
(2.) *O fortunatos nimium agricolas, ſi——*
   Fortunati nimium forent agricolæ, ſi——

The better to enable him to make uſe of theſe Rules, and perform his Variation in Latine, it will be convenient to begin his Variation of Phraſe in Engliſh, rendring one Engliſh into another, of the ſame ſenſe in other words. For inſtance.

In Affirmative Speeches.

I affect thee very much. I love thee very much. Thou art very much beloved of me. I have a very great affection towards thee. I have a very great love for thee. My love to thee is very great. My affection towards thee is very great. My love is very much ſet on thee. Thou art very far in my favour. O how I love thee! What an affection have I for thee?

In Negative Speeches.

It was not long of me that you were beaten. It came not through me that you were beaten. It was not through me that you were beaten. It was not becauſe of me that you were beaten. It is not my fault that you were beaten. It is no fault of mine that you were beaten. I am not to be blamed for your being beaten. I was not the cauſe of your beating. I was not the cauſe of your being beaten. I did not cauſe you to be beaten. I did not cauſe your beating. Your beating was not cauſed by me. Your beating came not by the means of me. Your beating came not through my means. I occaſioned not,—or, I was no occaſion of your beating. Did I occaſion your beating? Was I any cauſe of your being beaten?

In Interrogative Speeches.

What a clock is it? How goes the clock? How goes the day? What time of the day is it? How ſpends the day? what hour of the day is it?

In Epiphonematical Speeches.

Such truth is there in that old ſaying. Such truth there is in what was ſaid of old. So much truth there is in that old ſaying. So true is that old ſaying. So true is that which was ſaid of old. So truly was it ſaid of old. So truly did they of old ſay. That truth there is in that old ſaying. With that truth was it ſaid by them of old.

And once for all; if any deſire any further inſight into this moſt profitable exerciſe, he may conſult Mr. *Clarks Dux Oratorius*, written chiefly on that Subject, wherein, beſides Rules of Variation, there are almoſt infinite of varied Examples: *Eraſmus Colloquies*, *p.* 82. and *Edit. Londini* 1631. *Buchler's Elegancies*, *p.* 111. Dr. *Robinſon's Phraſes*, in the end: and the moſt accompliſhed *Comenius's Artis Oratoriæ* ſive *Grammaticæ Elegantis*, *c.* 5. which moſt choice Piece I owe to the kindneſs of the worthy Mr. *Henry Edmondſon*, then one of the Maſters in the School of *Tunbridge*, and do recommend to the peruſal of all young both Teachers and Learners. And thus much for Rules.

Now for Practice. The uſual way, I preſume, is to give the Learner ſentences of ſeveral forms, and put him to the varying of

of them. I condemn it not; it hath its uſe, its profit. But the Practice, that I would recommend, ſhould be upon his daily Leſſons: the Maſter firſt, by a line drawn underneath, noting to him what words and phraſes are capable of ſuch variation, as he hath Rules for, and then cauſing him to vary thoſe words and phraſes, according to his Rules, ſtill informing and helping him in what he fails through want of memory or underſtanding. After he is a little experienced, he is to be put to find out of himſelf what words or phraſes in his Leſſon, are variable, and accordingly to vary them. This exerciſe with a competent underſtanding, will in a ſhort ſpace produce a ſtrange alteration to the better in all the Latines of the Scholar. This may be done on the Repetition-day; but the oftner the better. *Experto crede.*

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Elegancies of the Particles.

A Freſh variety of choice Phraſes goes far in the Elegancy of a Latine Exerciſe: but nothing better ſets it off, than the interweavings of the *Particles*. Theſe, like thoſe gold and ſilver filings, wherewith *Baſſianus* ſtrew'd the Roman pavements, make a Latine ſmooth and radiant: or, as thoſe upper Conſtellations do the Firmament, they beſpangle an Oration, rendring it illuſtrious and glorious. One ſhall oft be raviſhed with admiration at the delicacy of a *Ciceronian* Period, and yet, when all comes to all, not be able to ſay, what more charmed, and took his phancy, than the orient ſparklings of ſome interwoven elegant Particles. This hath drawn ſo many Perſons of excellent Learning not only to take eſpecial notice, but write particular Tracts of the Elegancies of theſe. Not to inſiſt on what *Robertus Stephanus* hath done in his *Theſaurus Linguæ Latinæ*: or *Laurentius Valla* in his *Elegancies*: or *Johannes Buchlerus* in his *Elegancies*: or *Jacobus Omphalius* in his *Elocutionis Imitatio & Apparatus*: or *Hadrianus Cardinalis* in his *de Modis Latinè loquendi*: or *Franciſcus Sylvius* in his *Progymnaſmata*: or *Edmundus Richerius* in his *Rhetorick*: *Godſchalcus Stewichius*; *Horatius Turſelinus*; *Adamus Durrerus*, and *Philippus Pareus*, have all written juſt Tracts particularly of theſe. A competency therefore of knowledge of the Elegancies of the Particles, and of skill to uſe them elegantly, cannot but be yielded by reaſon; and by experience will be found to be hugely conducing to the rendring of the Learners Latine elegant. With this knowledge and skill

I adviſe the Teacher by all ways and means upon all occaſions to furniſh his Scholar, what he may. And every Lecture, every Exerciſe will afford him matter for Obſervation. But the ready way, I conceive, is to furniſh him with, and at convenient times read to him, ſome one or two Tracts of the Particles both of the *Engliſh* and *Latine* Tongue. For *Engliſh*, though I may not commend, yet I may mention mine own *Treatiſe* on that Subject. And for *Latine*, I recommend unto him *Horatius Turſelinus*; or rather, as being later and better, *Philippus Parens*, *de Particulis Latinæ Orationis*: which I wiſh were as common as it is good. And if the reading of theſe whole Authors, ſeem too laborious, and be like to take up too much time (though no time almoſt can be too much to be ſpent in ſo elegant a ſtudy) the Teacher may out of them, and his own Obſervation, make a ſhort Collection, and give to his Scholar for his Uſe. And till he ſhall have made a better of his own, he may uſe this following.

Some Particles are elegantly uſed *for* other words, and ſome are elegantly uſed *with* other words. I ſhall ſpeak firſt of thoſe that are elegantly uſed for others. And of theſe ſome are more elegant where other expreſſions either are not elegant, or not ſo elegant: and ſome are elegantly uſed for others, which alſo may in the ſame ſenſe be uſed almoſt, if not all out, as elegantly as they. I begin with the former.

Of Particles ſaid to be more elegantly uſed where other Expreſſions are not ſo Elegant; if they be not, as ſometimes they are, very Unelegant.

Rather ſay, *ad verbum*, than *de verbo ad verbum*: as, *Tabellas Latinas ad verbum de Græcis expreſſas.* Cic. 1. de Fin.

Rather ſay, *aliquando*, than *uno tempore aut altero*: as, *Illuceſcet aliquando dies, cùm tu—* Cic.

Rather repeat *alius* in divers Caſes, than ſay, *Unus*, *uno*, or *aliqui uno*, *alii alio modo*: as, *Alius alio dicendi genere gaudet. Aliis alius vivendi mos eſt.* So repeat *aliud*, or *aliter*, rather than ſay *aliud*, or *aliter quàm*: as, *Aliud dicis, aliud cogitas. Aliter dicit, aliter facit.*

Rather ſay, *alius ex alio*, than *unus poſt alium*: as, *Aliud ex alio me quotidie impedit.* Cic.

Rather ſay, *quis quid*, than *quis aliquid*: as, *Si quis quid reddit, magna habenda eſt gratia.* Ter. *At verò gravitate membrorum, & cruciatu dolorum ſi quis quem levavit, magnam ineat gratiam.* Cic. de Fin. l. 9. Though *quis* is uſed with *aliquid*: as, *Si quis aliquid ex ſua re, atque ex ſuo ſermone dixerit.* Cic. 2. Div. 40. *Si quis ſemel aliquid dixerit.* Id. ib. 52. And ſo *aliquis* is repeated with it ſelf. *Ut in hoc quoque mundo noſtro aliquid alicui*

par

par ſit. Cic. Ac. 4. 17. So rather ſay *quo quis*, than *quo aliquis*: as, *Quo enim quis verſutior & callidior eſt, hoc inviſior & ſuſpectior detractâ opinione probitatis.* Cic. So rather ſay *cum quis*, than *cum aliquis*: as, *Cum quis invitus laborem ſuſcipit, tum ſentit graviorem.* So immediately after *nè, num, niſi, ſeu, ſive*, uſe *quis*, rather than *aliquis*: as, *Ne quam patiar injuriam, opera mihi danda eſt. Num quas mihi affers literas? Niſi quæ me fortè fugiunt.* Cic. *Niſi quid aliud vobis placet.* Cic. *Si verum eſt* Fabium Labeonem, *ſeu quem alium id tenuiſſe.* Cic.

And laſtly, after *ſine* rather uſe *ullus*, *quiſpiam*, or *quiſquam*, than *aliquis*: as, *Sine cujuſpiam operâ; ſine cujuſquam auxilio; ſine ulla pecunia.*

Rather ſay, *unus aut alter*, than *unus vel duo*: as, *Quid tantum eſt in uno, aut altero die?* Cic.

N. Yet *Cic.* ſaid, *Horam unam, aut duas eodem loco armatos retinere.* Pro Deiot.

Rather ſay, *etiam num*, or *etiam nunc*, than *uſque nunc*: as, *Quæritur etiam num quis eum nuncium miſerit.* Cic. *Etiam nunc hic ſtas*, Parmenio? Ter. So rather ſay *etiam tum*, than *uſque tunc*: as, *Cum etiam tum in lecto* Craſſus *eſſet.* Cic.

Rather ſay, *hinc & illinc*, than *hinc & inde*: as, *Hinc & illinc exhibent mihi negotium.* Plaut.

Rather uſe *in dies*, or *in horas* after a Comparative Degree, than *magis, ac magis*: as, *Fit doctior in dies.*

Rather ſay, *maximè omnium*, than *plus quàm omnes*: as, *Qui maximè omnium nobilium Græcis literis ſtuduit.* Cic. So rather ſay, *minimè omnium*, than *minùs quàm omnes*: as, *Quod quidem tu minimè omnium ignoras.* Cic.

Rather ſay, *minimum*, than *ut minimum*, or *ad minus*: as, *Ita fiunt omnes partes minimùm octoginta una.* Cic.

Rather ſay, *non ita pridem*, than *non multo tempore antè*: as, *Noſtrâ autem civitate non ita pridem dominatu regio liberatâ.* Cic.

Rather ſay, *non idem tibi & mihi*, than *non idem tibi ſicut mihi*: as, *Non eadem vobis & illis neceſſitudo impendet.* Sal.

To expreſs a little time rather ſay, *parumper*, or *pauliſper*, than *parum*, or *paulum*: as, *Dum exiero, parumper opperire hîc.* Ter. *Pauliſper, dum ſe uxor, ut fit, comparat, moratus eſt.* Cic.

Rather ſay, *per hos dies, annos*, than *durantibus his diebus, annis*: as, *Nulla abs te per hos dies epiſtola inanis aliquâ re utili & ſuavi venerat.* Cic. *Quam provinciam tenuiſtis à prædonibus liberam per hoſce annos?* Cic.

Rather ſay, *pridie quàm*, than *pridie quo*: as, *Pridie quàm exceſſit è vitâ.* Cic. So uſe *quàm*, not *quo*, after *poſtridie*: as, *Poſtridie intellexi, quàm à vobis diſceſſi.* Cic.

Rather ſay, *præ*, or *præ ut*, than *in comparatione*: as, *Hîc ego illum contempſi præ me.* Ter. *Parum etiam, præ ut futurum eſt, prædicas.* Plaut.

Rather ſay, *pro virili parte*, than *quantum unus vir poteſt*: as, *Hæc qui pro ſuâ virili parte defendunt.*

After a Verb of doubting rather ſay *quin*, than *quod non*: as, *Quod ſi acciderit, non dubitat, quin brevi* Troja *ſit peritura.* Cic.

Rather ſay *quoties*, than *quot vicibus*: as, *Quoties tibi extorta eſt ſica iſta de manibus.*

Rather ſay *ut quiſque*, than *ſecundum quod quiſque*: as, *Ut quiſque eſt vir optimus, ita difficillimè alios eſſe improbos ſuſpicatur.* Cic.

Rather ſay, *ſemel & iterum*, than *ſemel & bis*: as, *Ut re ſemel atque iterum præjudicatâ condemnatus in judicium venerit.* Cic.

Rather ſay, *non temere eſt*, than *non ſine quâ re eſt*: as, *Non temere eſt, quod tu tam times.* Ter.

Rather uſe *ultra*, than *ulterius*: as, *Si probabiliter dicentur, nè quid ultra requiratis.* Cic.

Rather ſay, *paucis diebus poſt*, or *paucis poſt diebus*, than *poſt paucis diebus*: as, *Paucis poſt diebus quàm* Lucâ *diſceſſerat.* Cic.

Rather ſay *uſpiam*, than *in aliquo loco*: as, *Inde utrum conſiſtere uſpiam velit, an mare tranſire, neſcit.* Cic.

And thus much of Particles elegantly uſed where other Expreſſions are not elegant. I now proceed to the Second ſort.

Of Particles elegantly uſed where others alſo may be uſed elegantly.

A is elegantly uſed for *pro*: as, *Vide ne hoc totum*, Scævola, *ſit à me.* Cic. Alſo for *poſt*: as, *Quid antepones* Veneri *à jentaculo?* Plaut. Alſo for *contra*: as, *A quo periculo defendite, Judices, civem Fontium.* Cic.

Ad is elegantly uſed for *uſque ad*: as, Sophocles *ad ſummam ſenectutem tragœdias fecit.* Cic. *Inermes ad ſatietatem trucidabitis.* Liv *Quod iis ad denarium ſolveretur.* Cic. Alſo for *circiter* and *circa*: as, *Homines ad quindecim* Curioni *aſſenſerunt.* Cic. *Ad quæ tempora te expectem, facias me certiorem velim.* Cic. Alſo for *apud*: as, *Signa quæ nobis curâſti, ea ſunt ad* Cajetam *expoſita.* Cic. Alſo for *ante*: as, Clodius *abjectâ togâ, ſe ad genera pedes abjecit.* Cic. Alſo for *ſecundum*: as, *Ad arbitrium & nutum auditorum totum ſe fingit & accommodat.* Cic. Alſo for *præ* in Compariſon: as, *At nihil ad noſtram hanc.* Ter. Alſo for *poſt*: as, *Neſcio quid interſit, utrum nunc veniam, an ad decem annos.* Cic. Alſo for *de*: as, *Poſtquam vos ad virtutem verba feciſtis.* Symmach.

Adèo is elegantly put for *ità, tam*, or *tantùm*: as, *Adeóne hoſpes hujus urbis, adèo ignarus es, ut hæc neſcias?* Cic. So *adèo non* is elegantly uſed for *tantum abeſt ut*: as, *Adèo ipſe non violavit*

as

summam curam adhibuerit, ne quis captivo corpori illuderet. Curt.

Adhuc is elegantly uſed for *præterea:* as, *Niſi ſi quid adhuc fortè vultis.* Cic.

Admodum is elegantly uſed for *omnino:* as, Curio *literarum admodum nihil ſciebat.* Cic.

Alius is elegantly uſed for *diverſus,:* as, *Sed aliud quiddam, imò aliud, Craſſe, quærimus.* Cic.

At is elegantly uſed for *ſaltem:* as, *Si mihi republicâ bonâ frui non licebit, at carebo malâ.* Cic.

Certè is elegantly uſed for *ſaltem:* as, *Homines mortem optare incipiant, vel certè timere deſinant.* Cic.

Citiùs is elegantly uſed for *priùs:* as, *Vox me citiùs defecerit, quàm nomina.* Cic.

Cùm is elegantly uſed for *etſi:* as, *Cùm plus etiam contenderimus, quàm poſſumus; minus tamen faciemus, quàm debemus.* Cic.

De is elegantly put for *in* or *per* before words of Time: as, *In comitium de nocte venit.* Cic. Alſo for *ſuper:* as, Regulus *de captivis commutandis* Romam *miſſus.* Cic. Alſo for *ob* or *propter:* as, *Flebat uterque non de ſuo ſupplicio: ſed pater de filii morte, de patris filius.* Cic. Alſo for *quod attinet:* as, *De pace, ſentio ſimulationem eſſe apertam.* Cic. Alſo for *ſecundum:* as, *De amicorum ſententiâ* Roſſius Romam *confugit.* Cic. Alſo for *pro:* as, *De imperio decertare.* Cic.

Deinceps is elegantly put for *deinde:* as, *De juſtitiâ dictum eſt; deinceps, ut erat propoſitum de libertate dicendum.* Cic.

Eâ re is elegantly uſed for *propterea:* as, *Is metuit, & eâ re fugit.* Cic. *Et eâ re id ſequor.* Cic.

Eò is elegantly uſed for *ad id*, or *uſque ad id:* as, *Eò redactæ res erant, ut nulla amplius ſpes eſſet.* Cic. Alſo for *idiò:* as, *Illic homo aurum me ſcit habere, eò me ſalutat blandiùs.* Plaut.

Ergo is elegantly uſed for *causâ;* as, *Si quid contra alias legis ejus legis ergo factum ſit.* Cic.

Ex is elegantly uſed for *ſecundùm:* as, *Ex præceptis philoſophiæ vita acta.* Cic. *Ut ſpero, ſtatues ex dignitate noſtrâ.* Cic. Alſo for *poſt:* as, *Ex conſulatu profectus eſt in* Galliam. Cic.

Extrà is elegantly uſed for *præter:* as, *Extra ducem, paucoſque præterea.* Cic.

Hoc with *quo* is elegantly uſed for *tanto quanto:* as, *Hoc audio libentiùs, quo ſæpius.* Cic. *Quo difficilius, hoc præclarius.* Cic.

In is elegantly uſed for *inter:* as, *Hic in magnis viris non eſt habendus.* Cic.

Is with *qui* is elegantly uſed for *talis qualis:* as, *Itaque ego is in illum ſum, quem me eſſe vis.* Cic.

Id quod is elegantly put for *quæres:* as, *Secedant improbi, ſecernant ſe à bonis, unum in locum congregentur, muro denique id quod ſæpe jam dixi, ſecernantur à bonis.* Cic.

Ita

Ita is elegantly put for *hac conditione:* as, *Nam hoc ipſum ità juſtum eſt, ſi eſt voluntarium.* Cic.

Iterum is elegantly put for *ſecundo:* as, *Fabulæ vix dignæ quæ iterum legantur.* Cic. *Iterum ac tertio nominati.* Cic.

Juxta is elegantly put for *ſecundum:* as, *Juxta deos in tuâ manu eſt.* Tacit.

Licèt is elegantly put for *etiamſi:* as, *Licèt corpus abeſſet meum, dignitas jam in patriam redierat.* Cic.

Longè is elegantly uſed for *procul:* as, *Iſti nuncii quàm longè ſint, neſcio.* Cic. Alſo for *valde:* as, *Longè mihi alia mens.* Sal.

Minùs is elegantly uſed for *non:* as, *At non nunquam quæ prædicta ſunt, minùs eveniunt.* Cic.

Næ is elegantly uſed for *verè:* as, *Næ illi vehementer errant.* Cic.

Nec is elegantly uſed for *non:* as, *Quo mortuo nec ita multo poſt, in Galliam proficiſcitur.* Cic. *Nec enim illa prima vera eſt.* Cic.

Nihil is elegantly uſed for *non:* as, *Hoc tamen opus in apertum ut proferas, nihil poſtulo.* Cic.

Niſi is elegantly uſed for *veruntamen:* as, *De re nihil poſſum judicare, niſi illud mihi perſuadeo.* Cic.

Nullus is elegantly uſed for *non:* as, *Memini tametſi nullus moneas.* Ter.

Nuſquam is elegantly uſed for *nullo in loco:* as, *Ego verò nuſquam eſſe illos puto.* Cic.

Ob is elegantly uſed for *ante:* as, *Mihi ob oculos exilium verſatur.* Cic.

Omnino is elegantly uſed for *tantummodo* and *prorſus:* as, *Quinque omnino fuerunt, qui illum abſolverunt.* Cic. *Epulabar cum ſodalibus omnino modicè.* Cic.

Omnis is elegantly uſed for *totus:* as, *Eo omni tempore Romæ fui.* Cic.

Parum is elegantly uſed for *non ſatis:* as, *Duas dabo, una ſi parum eſt.* Plaut.

Per is elegantly uſed for *ob:* as, *Neque ſciebat, neque per ætatem etiam poterat.* Ter.

Perinde is elegantly uſed for *æquè* or *ita:* as, *Philoſophia non perinde ac de hominum eſt vitâ merita, laudatur.* Cic. *Quæ perdifficilia ſunt, perinde habenda ſunt, ac ſi effici non poſſint.* Cic.

Præ is elegantly uſed for *ante:* as, *Stillantem præ ſe pugionem tulit.* Cic. Alſo for *ob* or *propter:* as, *Solem, præ ſagittarum multitudine, non videbitis.* Cic.

Præter is elegantly uſed for *extra:* as, *Amicum ſibi ex Conſularibus neminem eſſe video, præter Lucullum.* Cic. Alſo for *ſupra:* as, *Attici in eo genere præter cæteros excellunt.* Cic.

Prætrquam is uſed for *niſi:* as, *Nullum à vobis præmium poſtulo, prætrquam hujus diei memoriam ſempiternam.* Cic.

Pro is uſed for *ante:* as, *Illa præſidia, quæ pro templis omnibus*

cernitis.

nitis. Cic. Alſo for *in :* as, *Laudati quoque pro concione omnes ſunt.* Liv. Alſo for *vice* or *loco :* as, *Tibi Marcelli ſtatua pro patibulo fuit.* Cic. Alſo for *ſecundum :* as, *Civitatibus pro numero militum pecuniæ ſummas deſcribere.* Cic. Alſo for *ob* or *propter :* as, *Pro hujus peccatis ego ſupplicium ſufferam.* Plaut.

Prope is uſed for *juxta :* as, *Cùm plebs prope ripam Anienis conſiſſet.* Cic.

Propter is uſed for *prope :* as, *In pratulo propter Platonis ſtatuam conſedimus.* Cic. *Ipſe cum liberis & colonis propter Aquilam adſidit.* Sal.

Quà repeated is elegantly uſed for *tum tum :* as, *Topiarium laudavi, ita omnia conveſtivit hederâ, quà baſim villæ, quà intercolumnia ambulationis.* Cic.

Quando is elegantly uſed for *quoniam :* as, *Quam quando contextus es, & tenes.* Cic. So *quandoquidem :* as, *Quandoquidem in iſtos oratores tantopere laudas.* Cic.

Quamvis is elegantly uſed for *quantumvis :* as, *Quaſi verò mihi difficile ſit, quamvis multos nominatim proferre.* Cic.

Quaſi is elegantly uſed for *tanquam :* as, *Sic eas exponam, quaſi gereretur res, non quaſi narretur.* Cic. Alſo for *ſicut*, or *non ſecus ac :* as, *Quaſi tua res aut bonos agatur, ita laboras.* Cic. Alſo for *ecce :* as, *Quantulus vobis videtur ? mihi quaſi pedalis.* Cic.

Qui is elegantly uſed for *ut :* as, *Nec tam ſum inſolens, qui me juvem eſſe dicam.* Cic. Alſo for *qualis :* as, *Sed illum eum eſſe oportuit, qui eſſe debeat.* Cic.

Quid is elegantly uſed for *cur :* as, *Sed quid ego argumentor ? quid plura diſputo ?* Cic.

Quis is elegantly uſed for *aliquis :* as, *Negat quis ? Nego.* Ter. *Ut, ſi quis quem oculis privaverit, dicat—* Cic. *Ut, ſi quid cui ſimile eſſe poſſit.* Cic.

Quod is elegantly uſed for *quantum :* as, *Ipſe (quod commodo tuo fiat) cum eo colloquere.* Cic. Alſo for *quantum ad id quod :* as, *Quod ad me ſcribis de Hermathena, mihi gratiſſimum eſt.* Cic. Alſo for *quia :* as, *Qui enim beatior Epicurus, quod in patriâ vivebat ; quàm Metrodorus, quod Athenis ?* Cic.

Quo is elegantly uſed for *quanto :* as, *Sed quo erant ſuaviores, eo majorem dolorem ille caſus afferebat.* Cic. *Quo gratior tua liberalitas C. Cæſar, nobis qui illa videmus, debet eſſe.* Cic. Alſo for *ut :* as, *Quo facilius probaret illa Romani eſſe hominis, idcirco—* Cic.

Quomodo is elegantly uſed for *ut* or *ſicut :* as, *Poſtulatio brevis, & quomodo mihi perſuadeo, aliquanto æquior.* Cic.

Quocirca is elegantly uſed for *quamobrem :* as, *Quocirca bene apud majores noſtros Senatus decrevit.* Cic.

Quippe is elegantly uſed for *utpote :* as, *Sol Democrito magnus videtur, quippe homini erudito.* Cic. *Convivia cum fratre non inibat, quippe qui ne in oppidum niſi perraro veniret.* Cic.

Secun-

Secundum is elegantly uſed for *pro:* as, *Secundum nos judicari volumus.* Cic.

Sic is elegantly uſed for *talis* (in deſcriptions of Nature and Manners) *Sic eſt vulgus, ex veritate pauca, ex opinione multa æſtimat.* Cic. *Sic eſt ingenium.* Ter. *Sic ſum, ſi placeo, utere.* Ter. *Qui ſic ſunt, haud multum hæredem adjuvant.* Ter.

Si is elegantly uſed for *an:* as, *Dicito, ſi paſcuntur aves.* Cic. Alſo for *etiamſi:* as, *Et me herculè, ſi nihil diceret, tanto officio me moveret.* Cic.

Sin is elegantly put for *ſed ſi:* as, *Si ita eſt, omnia faciliora: ſin aliter, magnum negotium.* Cic.

Sub is elegantly uſed for *paulo ante:* as, *Sub exitu vitæ.* Suet. *Sub lucem.* Virg. Alſo for *paulo poſt:* as, *Sub equeſtris finem certaminis, coorta eſt pugna peditum.* Liv.

Super is elegantly uſed for *de:* as, *Simulque cogites, quid nobis agendum ſit ſuper legatione.* Cic.

Supra is elegantly uſed for *ante:* as, *Illa, quam ſupra dixi.* Cic.

Tantùm is elegantly uſed for *ſolum:* as, *Nomen tantùm virtutis uſurpas: quid ipſa valeat, ignoras.* Cic. So *tantummodo.*

Tum is elegantly uſed for *deinde:* as, *Tum rationes in eâ diſputatione à te collectæ vetabant me reipublicæ penitus diffidere.* Cic.

Ubi is elegantly uſed for *in quo,* &c. as, *Ut is cuique locus ubi ipſe ſit, miſerrimus eſſe videatur.* Cic. Alſo for *poſtquam:* as, *Ubi ſemel quis pejeraverit, ei credi poſtea, non oportet.* Cic.

Vel is elegantly uſed for *ſaltem:* as, *Poſtremò, ſi nullo alio pacto vel fœnore.* Ter. Alſo for *etiam:* as, *Per me vel ſtertas licet, non modò quieſcas.* Cic. *Hoc in genere nervorum vel minimum, ſuavitatis autem vel plurimum* Cic.

Velut is uſed for *exempli causâ:* as, *Beſtiæ, quæ è terrâ gignuntur, velut Crocodili.* Cic.

Ultra is elegantly uſed for *præterea:* as, *Si probabiliter dicentur, ne quid ultra requiratis.* Cic.

Unde is elegantly uſed for *ex quo,* &c. as, *Equidem vobis fontes unde hauriretis, atque itinera ipſa putavit eſſe demonſtranda.* Cic.

Unus is elegantly put for *ſolus:* as, *In tuis ſummis laudibus excipiunt unam iracundiam.* Cic. And *unus & alter* for *duo:* as, *Venit unus, & item alter.* Ter.

Ut is elegantly put for *quomodo:* as, *Quid agit tua uxor? Ut valet?* Plaut. So *utcunque* for *quomodocunque.* Alſo for *ſicut:* as, *Erat cùm literis Latinis tum Græcis, ut temporibus illis, eruditus.* Cic. Alſo for *utpote qui:* as, *Ille, ut fuit ſemper apertiſſimus, non purgavit, ſed indicavit.* Cic. Alſo for *licet:* as, *Verùm, ut hoc non ſit, tamen ſervat rempublicam.* Cic. Alſo for *poſtquam:* as, *Ut ab urbe diceſſi, nullum prætermiſi diem, quin aliquid ad te literarum darem.* Cic.

Ut:

Ut ut is elegantly put for *utcunque*: as, *Ut ut hæc ſunt, tamen hoc faciam.* Ter.

And thus far of the Particles that are uſed elegantly for others. I now proceed to thoſe that remain.

Of Particles which are elegantly uſed together with others.

Ab hath *uſque* elegantly joyned to it: as, *Sed ab uſque Tmolo petivit.* Cic.

Abſque hath *te* or *eo eſſet* elegantly joyned to it: as, *Nam abſque te eſſet, ego illum haberem rectum.* Plaut. *Nam abſque eo eſſet, rectè ego mihi vidiſſem.* Ter. So, *Quam fortunatus cæteris ſum rebus, abſque una hac foret.* Plaut.

Ad hath *ſummam, extremum, poſtremum, ultimum* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Ad ſummam animo forti ſitis.* Cic. *Nudus atque egens ad extremum fugit è regno.* Cic. *Ibi ad poſtremum ſedit miles.* Plaut. *Si fidem ad ultimum præſtitiſſent.* Liv.

Æquè hath *ac, atque,* and *quam,* and *ut* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Quis eſſet tantus fructus in proſperis rebus, niſi haberes, qui illis æquè ac tu ipſe, gauderet?* Cic. *Sed me colit & obſervat, æquè atque illum ipſum patronum ſuum.* Cic. *Neque ipſam amicitiam tueri poſſumus, niſi æquè amicos & nos ipſos diligamus.* Cic. *Itaque libentiſſimè prædicabo* Cn. Pompeium *ſtudio & authoritate, æquè ut unumquemque veſtrum pro ſalute meâ laborâſſe.* Cic. *Noctibus illuſtribus æquè quam die cernunt.* Plin.

Alius and *aliter* have *ac, &, quam,* and *atque* elegantly after them: as, *Irrepit in hominum mentes alia dicentis, ac ſignificantis diſſimulatio.* Cic. *Non alius eſſem atque nunc ſum.* Cic. *Ne ſim ſalvus ſi aliter ſcribo, ac ſentio.* Cic. *Aliter, atque oſtenderam, facio.* Cic. *Lux denique longè alia eſt Solis & lychnorum.* Cic. *Quid hoc eſt aliud, quàm tollere è vita vitæ ſocietatem?* Cic. *Quod de puero aliter ad te ſcripſit, & ad matrem de filio, non reprehendo.* Cic. *Quod ſi ſors aliter, quàm voles evenerit.* Cic.

At hath *verò, enim,* and *etiam* elegantly with it: as, *At verò* Titus Roſcius *non unum ſefellit ſocium.* Cic. *At enim iſtoc nihil eſt magis, Syre, meis nuptiis adverſum.* Ter. *At etiam primo callidum & diſertum hominem credidi.* Ter.

Contra hath *ac, atque,* and *quàm* elegantly joyned to it: as, *Ut contra, ac dicat, accipi & ſentiri velit.* Cic. *Contra atque apud nos fieri ſolet.* Varro. *Contra, quàm nos ſuprà ſcripſimus.* Gell.

Cùm hath *tum* elegantly anſwering to it: as, *Sumus flagitiosè imparati, cùm à militibus, tum à pecunia.* Cic. *Quo audito, vehementer ſum commotus, cùm de Syriâ, tum de mea provincia.* Cic.

Eo hath elegantly *quo, quod, ut,* and *quia* anſwering to it: as, *Non eo dico, quo mihi veniat in dubium tua fides.* Cic. *Eoque tardius*

dius ſcripſi ad te, quod quotidie teipſum expectabam. Cic. *Id autem eo facilius credebatur, quia ſimile vero videbatur.* Cic. *Marionem ad te eo miſi, ut tecum ad me quamprimum veniret.* Cic.

Etiam hath *nunc, tum, ne,* and *tum* elegantly with it: as, *Etiam nunc ſtatuere non poſſunt, utrum—* Cic. *Quæritur etiamnum, quis eum nuncium miſerit.* Cic. *Etiamne eſt quid porro?* Plaut. *Narrat, ut virgo etiam tum ab ſe integra ſiet.* Ter.

Facilè is elegantly joyned with *primus* or *princeps:* as, *Non ſolùm ſui municipii, ſed illius vicinitatis facilè primus.* Cic. *Eudemus, Platonis auditor, in Aſtrologia, judicio doctiſſimorum hominum, facilè princeps.* Cic. So with almoſt any Superlative Degree noting Praiſe or Diſpraiſe: as, *Plato vir unus totius Græciæ facilè doctiſſimus.* Cic. *Perditorum hominum ita ſimilis, ut eſſet facilè deterrimus.* Cic.

Jam hath elegantly joyned with it *à, inde à,* and *uſque ab:* as, *Jam inde à Conſulatu meo.* Cic. *Jam inde ab Ariſtotele.* Cic. *Vetus opinio eſt jam uſque ab Heroicis ducta temporibus.* Cic. *Ut jam à principio videndum ſit, quemadmodum velis pervenire ad extremum.* Cic. *Philocrates jam inde uſque à puero mihi amicus fuit.* Plaut.

In hath ſeveral Subſtantives of *Time, Order,* or *Appearance* elegantly after it: as, *Conſilia in horas mutari vides.* Cic. *In ſingulos dies creſcit hoſtium numerus.* Cic. *Non ſolùm de die, ſed etiam in diem vivere.* Cic. *In proximum annum conſulatum peteres.* Cic. So, *in præſens; in poſterum; in futurum; in perendinum. Imperium per omnes in orbem ibat.* Liv. *In ſpeciem preces jactantur.* Liv.

Interea hath elegantly *dum* and *quoad* joyned with it: as, *Interea dum hæc, quæ diſperſa ſunt, coguntur.* Cic. *Interea quoad fides eſſet data, Cæſarem facturum, quæ polliceretur.* Cæſ.

Is hath *ut* and *qui* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Nec tamen is ſum, ut mea me maximè delectent.* Cic. *Nullo modo is erat, qui nervos virtutis incideret.* Cic. 1. Acad. 10.

Id hath *ætatis* or *temporis* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Duo filii id ætatis.* Cic. *Id ætatis jam ſumus, ut omnia fortiter ferre debeamus.* Cic. *Maximè quod is locus ab omni turbâ id temporis vacuus eſſet.* Cic. *Venit enim ad me, & quidem id temporis, ut retinendus eſſet.* Cic.

Ita is elegantly joyned with *non* or *nec* or *haud:* as, *Simulachra præclara, ſed non ita antiqua.* Cic. *Nec ita multum provectus, rejectis Auſtro ſum in eum ipſum locum unde conſcenderam.* Cic. *Tibure haud ita multò ante mortuus eſt.* Liv. Alſo with *ſi, ne, ut ne:* as, *In fœdere additum erat, ita id ratum fore, ſi populus cenſuiſſet.* Liv. *Ita fugias ne præter caſam.* Ter. *Sed tamen ita velim (te nobiſcum eſſe,) ut ne quid properes.* Cic.

Juxta hath *ac ſi, atque,* and *cum* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Tum reliquis officiis, juxta ac ſi meus frater eſſet, ſuſtentavit.* Cic.

Abſen-

Abſentium bona juxta atque interemptorum diviſa fuère. Liv. Dec. 1. l. 1. *Juxta rem mecum tenes.* Plaut.

Licet hath *per* with his Accuſative Caſe elegantly joyned to it: as, *Per me vel ſtertas licet, non modò quieſcas.* Cic. *Sinatis hunc ſcire, dum per ætatem licet.* Ter.

Longè is elegantly joyned with words of Difference, Diſſimilitude, or Excellence: as, *Longè aliter, atque à me dicta erant, detulerunt.* Cic. *Quod eſt longè ſecus.* Cic. *Vir longè poſt homines natos improbiſſimus.* Cic. Pætus *longè princeps municipii* Lucenſis. Cic.

Magis hath *quàm* and *ſi* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Jus bonumque apud eos non legibus magis, quàm naturâ valebat.* Sal. *Magis dicas, ſi ſcias, quod ego ſcio.* Plaut. It is alſo elegantly joyned unto Subſtantives, as well as to uncompared Adjectives: as, *Niſi fortè magis erit parricida, qui conſularem patrem, quàm ſi quis humilem necaverit.* Cic.

Maximè hath elegantly joyned with it *quàm, vel, quàm qui, ut quiſque, ut cum:* as, *Dicere quàm maximè ad veritatem accommoda.* Cic. *Quæ quidem vel maximè ſuſpicionem movent.* Cic. *Tam ſum amicus reipublicæ, quàm qui maximè.* Cic. *Ut quiſque maximè opis indigeat, ita ei potiſſimùm opitulari.* Cic. *Domus ejus celebratur ut cum maximè.* Cic.

Minùs hath *ſi* and *ſin* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Si minùs necari, at cuſtodiri oportebat.* Cic. *Quod ſi aſſecutus ſum gaudeo: ſin minùs, hoc me tamen conſolabor.* Cic.

Minimè hath *omnium* and *gentium* elegantly with it: as, *Ad te minimè omnium pertinebat*— Cic. *Ah, minimè gentium: non faciam.* Ter.

Mox hath *quàm* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Quàm mox navigo?* Plaut. *Expecto quàm mox* Chærea *hâc ratione utatur.* Cic.

Ne hath *quidem* and *nunc* elegantly going with it, and *dum* joyned to it: as, *Nunquam illum ne minimâ quidem re, offendi.* Cic. *Ne nunc ſenum convivio delector.* Cic. *Satrapes ſi ſiet amator, nunquam ſufferre ejus ſumtus queat, nedum tu poſſis.*

Nec and *neque* are elegantly joyned with *dum, enim,* and *verò:* as, Caſſius *ineptas literas miſit, nec dum* Bibuli *erant allatæ.* Cic. *Neque dum* Roma *es profectus.* Cic. *Neque enim injuriâ metuebat.* Cic. *Neque verò mihi quicquam præſtabilius videtur.* Cic.

Nemo is elegantly joyned with *homo* and *quiſquam:* as, *Neminem hominem pluris facio.* Cic. *Nemo quiſquam illorum ad te venit.* Ter. Alſo with *hominum,* and *omnium:* as, *Nemo eſt hominum, qui vivat, minus.* Ter. *Facio pluris omnium hominum neminem.* Cic.

Nihil hath *ne quidem* divided by another word elegantly after it: as, *Ad eas ego literas nihil ſcripſi, ne gratulandi quidem causâ.* Cic.

Nimio

Nimio hath *plus* elegantly joyned to it: as, *Sed quia nimio plus te diligo.* Cic.

Nimium hath *quantum* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Huic generi orationis aſpergentur etiam ſales, qui in dicendo nimium quantum valent.* Cic.

Niſi hath *ſi, quis,* and *ſiquis* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Niſi ſi id eſt, quod ſuſpicor, aliquid monſtri alunt.* Ter. *Niſi quis Deus nos reſpexerit.* Cic. *Niſi verò ſi quis eſt, qui* Catilinæ *ſimiles cum* Catilinâ *ſentire non putet.* Cic. Alſo *quod quia, ut,* and *verò:* as, *Nihil video quod timeam, niſi quod omnia ſunt incerta.* Cic. *Non dubium eſt, quin mihi magnum malum ex hac re ſit, niſi quia neceſſe fuit hoc facere.* Ter. *Nihil agam, niſi ut audiam doctorem tuum.* Cic. *Niſi verò paucos fuiſſe arbitramini, qui conari, aut ſperare poſſent, ſe tantum delere poſſe imperium.* Cic.

Non hath elegantly joyned with it *quin, quo,* and *modò non:* as, *Non quin rectum eſſet, ſed quia multò rectius fuit.* Cic. *Non quo eâ ſit mihi quicquam cavius, aut eſſe debeat.* Cic. *Tu id non modò non prohibebas, verùm etiam approbabas.* Cic.

Nullus hath *quin* elegantly after it: as, *Dies fere nullus eſt, quin domum meam ventitet.* Cic.

Nunc hath *denique* and *jam* elegantly with it: as, *Nunc denique amare te videor, antea dilexiſſe.* Cic. *Illum amabam olim, nunc jam alia cura impendet pectori.* Plaut.

Nunquam hath *ullus* and *quin* coming elegantly after it: as, *Nunquam ex tuis ullæ mihi literæ redditæ ſunt. Nunquam unum intermittit diem, quin ſemper veniat.* Ter.

Nuſquam hath *gentium* elegantly with it: as, *Immo equidem, niſi nunc hodie, nuſquam vidi gentium.* Plaut.

Omnino hath *omnis, nullus, nihil, non* elegantly with it: as, *Vis & injuria, & omnino omne, quod obſuturum eſt.* Cic. *Omnino nulla conſtitutio, nec conſtitutionis pars, poteſt ſimul——* Cic. *Ut non multum, aut omnino nihil Græcis cederetur.* Cic. *Poetas Græcos omnino non conor attingere.* Cic.

Par hath *ac* and *atque* elegantly joyned to it: as, *Nec mihi par cum* Lucio *ratio eſt, ac tecum fuit.* Cic. *Si par in nobis hujus artis, atque in illo Pictore ſcientia fuiſſet.* Cic.

Pariter hath *ac, acſi, atque, atque ut, &,* and *ut* elegantly coming after it: as, *Pariter nunc operâ me adjuves, ac dudum re opitulata es.* Plaut. *Pariter ac ſi hoſtes adeſſent, incedere.* Sall. *Ecaſtor pariter hoc atque alias res ſoles.* Plaut. *Pariter hoc fit, atque ut alia facta ſunt.* Plaut. *Nunc tu es mihi germanus pariter corpore & animo.* Ter. *Filius pariter moratus, ut pater.* Ter.

Per hath elegantly after it words relating to leave, power, perſon, time, manner, means: as, *Ne id quidem per legem facere potuiſti.* Cic. *Cùm per valetudinem & per anni tempus navigare poteris.* Cic. *Per me vel ſtertas licet, non modò quieſcas.* Cic.

Nihil

Nihil intereſt per procuratorem agas, an per teipſum. C. *Per tempus advenis.* Ter. Romæ *per id tempus duo maximi ſuêre terrores.* Liv. *Per ludum & jocum aliquem fortunis evertere.* Cic. *Qui per virtutem perit, non interit.* Plaut. *Per inſidias interficere.* Cic.

Perinde hath elegantly after it *ac, ut, acſi, quaſi, atque:* as, *Non perinde, ac eſt merita, laudatur.* Cic. *Perinde erit, ut acceperis.* Cic. *Perinde, ac ſi virtute viciſſent.* Cic. *Perinde quaſi certi quicquam ſit in rebus humanis.* Cic. *Nequaquam perinde atque in capta urbe, vagatus eſt ignis.* Liv.

Poſt is elegantly placed between a Subſtantive of Time, and his Adjective: as, *Paucis poſt diebus caſtra communivit.* Liv. Annibal *tertio poſt die, quam venit, copias in aciem eduxit.* Liv. *Multis poſt annis pecunia recuperata eſt.* Cic.

Præ hath *ut, quòd,* and *quàm* elegantly with it, when Compariſon is noted: as, *Parùm etiam, præ ut futurum eſt, prædicas.* Plaut. *Omnes res relictas habeo, præ quod tu velis.* Plaut. *Præ quàm quod moleſtum eſt.* Plaut.

Pridie and *poſtridie* have *quam* elegantly after them: as, *Hæc ego pridie ſcribebam, quam comitia fore putabantur.* Cic. *Quid cauſæ fuerit, poſtridie intellexi, quam à vobis diſceſſi.* Cic.

Primùm hath *cum, nunc, ut, ſimulac,* and *omnium* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Cùm primùm in eam inſulam veni.* Cic. *Equidem qui nunc primùm huc venerim, ſatiari non queo.* Cic. *Ut primùm poteſtas data eſt.* Cic. *Simulac primùm niti poſſunt.* Cic. *Primùm omnium non te fugit.* Cic.

Pro hath elegantly joyned with it *ut, eo ac, eo acſi, eo atque ſi, eo ut, eo quòd, eo quantum:* as, *Prout hominis facultates ferebant.* Cic. *Spero deos, pro eo ac mereor, relaturos eſſe gratiam.* Cic. *Pro eo acſi conceſſum ſit concludere oportebit.* Cic. *Pro eo eſt atque ſi teſtis adhibitus non eſſet.* Ulp. *Pro eo ut temporis difficultas, aratorumque penuria tulit.* Cic. *Vereor nè parùm tibi, pro eo quod à te habeo, reddiderim.* Cic. *Pro eo, quantum in quibuſque ſit ponderis, æſtimanda ſunt.* Cic.

Prope hath *à* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Prope à meis ædibus ſedebas.* Cic. *Quo propius aberat ab ortu, eo melius cernebat.* Cic. Alſo *ut:* as, *Prope fuit, ut Dictator crearetur.* Liv. *Prope eſt factum, ut injuſſu Prætoris, in aciem exirent.* Liv. *Prope adeſt, ut palam fiat.* Plaut. *Prope adeſt cum alieno more mihi vivendum eſt.* Ter.

Proximè hath *atque* elegantly coming after it: as, *Non poſſum ego non aut proximè atque ille, aut etiam æquè laborare.* Cic.

Quàm hath *ut* and *quomodo, contra, ſupra, infra, dudum, pridem, mox* elegantly after it: as, *Hæc ſunt dicta ſubtiliùs, quàm ut quivis ea poſſit agnoſcere.* Cic. *Multa præclara in eo viro cognovi: ſed nihil eſt admirabilius, quàm quomodo ille mortem* Marci *filii tulit.* Cic. *Quanquam quid ego de veſtro jure contra quam propoſue-*

ram diſputabo? Cic. *Sæpe ſupra feret quàm fieri poſſit.* Cic. *Hoc eſt infra quàm illud.* Cic. *Quàm dudum tu adveniſti?* Ter. *Quæſo quàm pridem hoc nomen, Fanni, in adverſaria retuliſti?* Cic. *Demonſtrat, quàm pridem ſibi hæreditas veniſſet.* Cic. *Quid expectas quàm mox ego eos dicam eſſe Senatoris?* Cic. *Expecto, quàm mox* Chærea *hâc oratione utatur.* Cic. It is alſo ſet with great elegancy before a Superlative Degree: as, *Sed peto à te, ut quàm celerrimè mihi librarius mittatur.* Cic. *Expoſui quàm breviſſimè potui, oracula.* Cic.

Quin is elegantly uſed after Negative Particles, *Nemo, nullus, nihil, non:* as, *Nemo* Lilybæi *fuit, quin viderit; in* Siciliâ, *quin audierit.* Cic *Dies fere nullus eſt, quin hic Satyrus domum meam ventitet.* Cic. *Cauſæ nihil dico, quin ita ſit.* Cic. *Non quin diſſentiam, ſed quod—* Cic.

Quippe hath *qui, quia, quod,* and *cum* elegantly after it: as, *Convivia cum fratre non inibat, quippe qui ne in oppidum quidem, niſi perraro veniebat.* Cic. *Ego verò laudo.* G. *Rectè ſanè.* C. *Quippe quia magnarum id remedium ægritudinum eſt.* Ter. *Ibi multa de mea ſententia queſtus eſt.* Cæſ. *Quippe quod etiam* Craſſum *ante vidiſſet.* Cic. *Quippe cum præ te feras, tentare magis, quàm conſulere Senatum.* Liv.

Quiſquam hath *omnium* and *unus* elegantly joyned with it: as, *An hoc dubitavit quiſquam omnium, quin is venalem in* Siciliâ *juriſdictionem habuerit?* Cic. *Ne quiſquam unus malis artibus poſtea tam popularis eſſet.* Liv.

Quiſque is elegantly uſed after *ſe, ſuus, qui*; an Adjective Numeral; or a Superlative Degree: alſo betwixt two Superlatives: as, *Se quiſque diligit. Suæ quemque fortunæ maximè pœniteat.* Cic. *In quo quiſque artificio excellit, is in ſuo genere* Roſcius *dicitur.* Cic. *Quinto quoque anno* Sicilia *cenſetur.* Cic. *Certè enim recentiſſima quæque ſunt correcta & emendata maximè.* Cic. *Optimum quodque rariſſimum eſt.* Cic.

Quo is elegantly joyned with *minùs:* as, *Nihil impedit, quo minùs id, quod maximè placeat, facere poſſimus.* Cic. *Quo minùs familiaris ſum, hoc ſum ad inveſtigandum curioſior.* Cic. Alſo with *non:* as, *Non quo de tuâ conſtantiâ dubitem, ſed quia mos eſt ita rogandi, rogo.* Cic.

Quod hath *ſi* elegantly with it: as, *Quod ſi nihil profecero, nihilominus maximo ſum animo.* Cic.

Quotus hath *quiſque* elegantly joyned to it: as, *Quotus enim quiſque Philoſophorum invenitur, qui ſit ita moratus?* Cic.

Secus hath *ac, acſi, atqui,* and *quàm* elegantly after it: as, *Illud non dixi ſecus, ac ſentiebam.* Cic. *Non ſecus acſi meus eſſet frater.* Cic. *Sed ſi aliquanto ſecus, atque in tradendâ arte dici ſolet.* Cic. *Mihi autem erit maximæ curæ, nequid fiat ſecus quàm volumus.* Cic.

Si

Si hath *minùs*, and *maximè*, and *quidem* elegantly with it: as, *Si minùs ſupplicio affici, at cuſtodiri oportebat.* Cic. *Hic noſter vulgaris Orator, ſi minùs erit doctus, attamen in dicendo exercitatus.* Cic. *Si maximè ſtatuæ eſſent dejectæ.* Cic. *O fortunatam rempublicam, ſiquidem hanc ſentinam ejecerit.* Cic.

Similiter hath *ac, atque*, and *ut ſi* elegantly after it: as, *Similiter facis, ac ſi me roges, cur te duobus contuear oculis.* Cic. *Neque verò illum ſimiliter, atque ipſe eram, commotum eſſe vidi.* Cic. *Similiter facere eos, qui inter ſe contenderent, ut ſi nautæ inter ſe certarent.* Cic. The Adjective *Similis* hath the ſame Particles elegantly after it: as, *Nec ſimilem habeat vultum ac ſi ampullam perdidiſſet.* Cic. 4. de Fin. *Verumque ſit, ſimili nos affectos eſſe ſupplicio, atque eos, qui quondam——* Cic. de Philoſ. *Similem pavorem, indeque fugam fore, ac bello Gallico fuerit.* Liv. *Similis erit finis boni atque antea fuerat.* Cic. *Similéſque ſunt, ut ſi gubernatorem in navigando nihil agere ducant.* Cic. Thence *Plaut. Haud conſimili ingenio atque ille eſt.* And *Liv. Conſilia, haud diſſimilia, ac ſi quis——*

Simul hath elegantly after it *ac, atque*, and *ut*: as, *Simul ac mihi collibitum eſt.* Cic. *Quod is ſimul atque ſenſit——* Cic. *Simul ut videro* Curionem. Cic.

Sin hath *minùs* elegantly joyned to it: as, *Si perficiunt, optimè: ſin minùs, ad noſtrum Jovem revertamur.* Cic.

Sub hath *ſtatim* elegantly with it: as, *Sub eas literas ſtatim tuæ recitatæ ſunt.* Cic. Pomp. *ſe legionem adducturum: ſed non ſtatim ſub mentionem.* Cic.

Suprà hath *quàm* and *nihil* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Corpus patiens inediæ ſuprà quàm cuique credibile eſt.* Sal. *Ita accuratè ut nihil ſuprà.* Cic.

Talis hath elegantly after it *ac*, or *atque, ut*, and *qui*: as, *Honos talis paucis eſt datus, ac mihi.* Cic. *Tali atque hic eſt infortunio.* Ter. *Vita quidem talis fuit ut nihil poſſet accedere.* Cic. *Talem igitur te eſſe oportet, qui primum te ab impiorum civium ſocietate ſejungas.* Cic.

Tam hath elegantly after it *quàm, ut, qui*, and *quàm qui*: as, *Tam te diligit quàm ſi vixerit tecum.* Cic. *Non eſſem tam inurbanus, ut eo gravarer, quod vos cupere ſentirem.* Cic. *Quis eſt tam Lynceus, qui in tantis tenebris nihil offendat?* Cic. *Tam levis, quàm qui leviſſimus.* Cic. *Tam mihi gratum id erit, quàm quod gratiſſimum.* Cic.

Tamen hath *ne* in an Interrogation elegantly joyned with it: as, *Tamenne iſta tam abſurda defendes?* Cic. Alſo *etſi*: as, *Quæ tamenetſi ita ſcripta ſunt.* Cic. *Tamenetſi iſtuc mihi acerbum eſt, quia hero te carendum eſt optimo.* Plaut.

Tantiſper hath *dum* elegantly after it: as, *Ego hic tantiſper dum exit, te opperiar foris.* Ter.

Tantum hath *non* elegantly after it: as, *Tantum non ſtatim à funere ad negotiorum conſuetudinem redit.* Sueton. Alſo *abeſt*: as, *Tantum abfuit, ut inflammares animos noſtros, ſomnium iſto loco vix tenebamus*— Cic. *Tantum abeſt, ut ſcribi contra nos nolimus, ut id etiam maximè optimus.* Cic.

Tum hath *demum* and *denique* elegantly after it: as, *Tum demum ſciam rectè monuiſſe, ſi tu rectè caveris.* Plaut. *Tum denique fore beatas reſpub. putavit, ſi aut docti, aut ſapientes homines eas regere cœpiſſent.* Cic.

Ubi hath *primùm* elegantly joyned with it: as, *Ubi primùm eſt licitum, illico properavi abire de foro.* Plaut.

Vel hath *maximè* and *optimè* joyned elegantly to it: as, *Hoc uno præſtamus vel maximè feris*— Cic. *Cùm* Sophocles *vel optimè ſcripſerit, tamen*— Cic. 2. de Fin.

Verò comes elegantly after *ego, id, an, jam, immo, quaſi, minimè*, &c. as, *Ego verò, Servi, vellem, ut ſcribis, in meo graviſſimo caſu affuiſſes.* Cic. *Gratia Sexti Nævii ne Pub. Quintio noceat, id verò non mediocriter pertimeſco.* Cic. *An verò obliti eſtis, judices?* Cic. *Jam verò virtuti* Cn. Pompeii *quæ poteſt par oratio inveniri?* Cic. *Quid ergo? hoc ſolum auditione expetere cœpit, cùm id ipſe non vidiſſet? Immo verò alia complura.* Cic. *Quaſi verò priſcum aliquod, aut inſolitum verbum interpretaretur.* Cic. *Reprehendo igitur? Minimè verò.* Cic.

Vix hath *dum* and *tandem* elegantly joyned to it: as, *Vix dum epiſtolam tuam legeram, cùm ad me Poſthumius Curius venit.* Cic. *Ebem, vix tandem percepi ſuper his rebus noſtris te loqui.* Plaut. Alſo *aut ne* with it ſelf repeated: as, *Quæ propter exiguitatem vix, aut ne vix quidem appareant.* Cic. 4. de Fin.

Ultrà hath *quàm* elegantly joyned to it: as, *Exordium, ultrà quàm ſatis eſt, producitur.* Cic. *Servum graviſſimè de ſe opinantem, non ultra quàm compedimus coercuit.* Sueton.

Uſque hath *à, ab, è, ex, ad, in* elegantly joyned to it: as, *Uſque à mari ſupero Romam proficiſci.* Cic. *Siculo proſpexit ab uſque Pachyno.* Virg. *Uſque è Perſiâ.* Durr. *Qui ex ultimâ Syriâ navigarent.* Cic. 7. Verr. *Fugientes uſque ad flumen perſequuntur.* Cæſ. 7. B Gall. *Legatum uſque in Hiſpaniam miſit.* Cic. pro Leg. Manil. Alſo *eo* and *adeo*: as, *Uſque eo ego illius ferre poſſum ineptias, & magnifica verba, verba dum ſint.* Ter. *Scitis omnes, uſque adeo, hominem in periculo fuiſſe, quoad ſcitum ſit, Sextium vivere.* Cic. *Quis huic urbi uſque adeo eſt inimicus, ut iſta diſſimulare poſſit?* Cic.

Ut hath *ſtatim* elegantly coming with it: as, *Philippus, ut bevi me ſalutavit, ſtatim Romam profectus eſt.* Cic. So *primùm* and *conſeſtim*. Alſo the Superlative Degree of an Adverb: as, *Tam appellat hominem ut blandiſſimè poteſt.* Cic. pro Clu. Alſo it hath elegantly with it *non, ne, maximè, quiſque, quid*: as, *Fieri*

nullo

nullo pacto poteſt, ut non dicas quid non probes. Cic. *Atque equidem orante, ut ne id faceret, Thaide.* Ter. *Poſtulant enim non ut ne cogantur ſtatuere; Quid igitur? ut ipſis ne liceat.* Cic. *Ut maximè inveneris—* Cic. *Ut quiſque maximè opis indigeat, ita ei potiſſimùm opitulari.* Cic. *De pugna, inquis, potiùs, quàm ſervias. Ut quid? Si victus eris, proſcribare; ſi viceris, tamen ſervias.* Cic.

And thus much of the Particles which are elegantly uſed together with others.

Now, as theſe are not all the Particles, whereof there be Elegant uſes; ſo neither are theſe all the Elegant uſes, that are made of theſe Particles: there being, as, many more beſides theſe, ſo, very much more obſervable (and nothing leſs elegant than what is here ſaid) of theſe. All I intended herein, was to give the Learner ſuch a taſte of theſe Delicacies, as might whet his Phancy to a more eager deſire after a fuller knowledge of them. Notwithſtanding, even theſe few well digeſted, will have ſuch influence upon all his Exerciſes, as that no one of them will be without ſome ſavoury reliſh of pure *Roman* Eloquence. Only I muſt caution the Teacher, that he patiently bear with, and gently correct his Scholars miſtakes in theſe things; which, until he be well verſed in them, he will, for want of judgment and experience, be apt to fall into. And this is all I ſhall ſay for the preſent of the Elegancies of the Particles.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Idioms of Engliſh and Latine.

EVery Language hath its *Idiotiſms* and Proprieties, Phraſes and Forms of ſpeaking, peculiar to it ſelf, which cannot be rendred word for word into any other Language but with much barbarity and baldneſs of expreſſion. Thus however it is in Engliſh and Latine: inſomuch that either way to be *nimium fidus interpres*, to ſtick too cloſe to the Verbal Tranſlation, will betray a man into ridiculous abſurdities. Therefore to take the Learner off again from his nice inſiſting on Verbal Tranſlating, and remedy thoſe inconveniencies that come by his ſticking too cloſe thereto, it will be neceſſary to acquaint him with the *Idiotiſms* of both the Engliſh and Latine, and ſhew him how to expreſs himſelf in either Language according to the reſpective Proprieties thereof.

The one Precept in order to this, is, To heed the *Senſe* more than the *words*, and to fit the expreſſion thereunto: That being well rendred, whether into Engliſh or Latine, whoſe ſenſe is clearly and fully expreſſed in the Language whereby it is rendred, though the words be more or fewer than were in that, whence the Tranſlation was made. Obſervation indeed hath the main ſtroke in this buſineſs. Yet ſundry Helps may be adminiſtred. And for the eaſe of the Maſter, and profit of the Scholar, I ſhall ſet down ſuch as I either conceive, or have found beneficial in this caſe.

One may be for the Teacher to obſerve unto him all the elegant *Idiotiſms*, that accidentally occur in his Lectures and Exerciſes; and cauſe him to ſet them down in a Book, and often to review them, and repeat them.

Another may be, to put him to learn ſuch Latine Authors, as are ſo tranſlated into Engliſh, as that the propriety of both Languages is heeded unto and obſerved by the Tranſlator, allowing him the uſe of the Tranſlation. Such are *Tully*'s *Offices* tranſlated by Mr. *Brinſlie*, *Terence*'s *Comedies* by Mr. *Bernard*, *Corderius*'s *Colloquies* by Mr. *Hoole*, &c. and *Janua Linguarum* by Mr. *Robotham*.

A third may be to give him a Catalogue of Engliſh *Idiotiſms* barbarouſly tranſlated, and together with them, by way of correction, the elegant Tranſlation of them; and labour to make him underſtand the ridiculous barbarity of the one, and propriety and elegancy of the other, after this manner.

Send

Send me word { Bar. *Mitte mihi verbum.*
Eleg. *Fac me per literas certiorem.*

I am ſhort of money { Bar. *Brevis ſum pecuniæ.*
Eleg. *Deficit me pecunia.*

Of this nature *Corderius* compoſed a whole Book, ſtyled, *De corrupti ſermonis emendatione*, which may be uſefully peruſed by any Learner, or young Teacher of the Latine Tongue.

A fourth may be for the Teacher, firſt, to read over himſelf every Engliſh, that his Scholar is to make into Latine, and to obſerve what *Idiotiſms* occur in that, and advertiſe the Learner of them, and ſhew him how to vary the Engliſh Phraſe into ſuch other expreſſion, as is capable of an Elegant Verbal Tranſlation.

But the fifth, (and that which I ever found moſt beneficial) is to give the Learner to Tranſlate ſome *Engliſhes compoſed all, or moſt of Idiomatical expreſſions*, ſuch as cannot, without moſt ridiculous barbarity, be tranſlated word for word into Latine: and to ſhew him, and make him underſtand the ridiculous barbarouſneſs of his own Verbal Tranſlations, and to furniſh him inſtead thereof with the proper and elegant expreſſions. When he hath gone over in tranſlating any one ſuch Engliſh, which would be of ſome pretty length, then cauſe him to be very exact in giving readily without book, phraſe by phraſe, the corrected Latine for the Engliſh, and the Engliſh for the Latine. Alſo make him conſtrue the Latine *verbatim*, ſo far as it may with good ſenſe be done (it were not amiſs to make him tranſlate it word for word, as far as may be) for this will help him ſtill more to the underſtanding of the Engliſh Phraſe, and teach him how to reſolve ſuch Engliſh Phraſes, into other words and expreſſions of like import, and much facilitate the whole work. After that, cauſe him to tranſlate it over again, getting new Phraſes for every expreſſion; and if there be no new ſupply (which it is rare but there will be) let him vary what he hath, ſo as that it may ſeem new. And let him do again all the ſame with this ſecond Tranſlation, which he did with the former. And laſt of all, cauſe him (looking upon and reading his Engliſh, unleſs, (which is better) he can ſay it without book) to give for every Engliſh expreſſion both ſeveral Latine Tranſlations. Then proceed to another; and ſtill to another of the ſame nature, ſo long as there ſhall be need or reaſon.

This Exerciſe, as it is of all others the moſt difficult, ſo alſo the moſt profitable. It is not imaginable what a ſtrange alteration to the better it will in ſhort time produce in all the Scholars performances. And therefore I do moſt ſeriouſly, above all

others, recommend it from my own experience unto the practice of others.

For the help of the Scholar in this work, there are of late ſundry Books come forth, *viz.* Mr. *Clarks Phraſeologia Puerilis*, Mr. *Willis's Angliciſms Latinized*; and laſt of all, my own *Idiomatologia Anglo-Latina*, or *Engliſh Latine Phraſeologie*, in which, if the Learner ſhould be put to get every day one Head of Phraſes ſo perfectly at leaſt, as that looking only on the Engliſh, he can give the Latine for it; and looking only on the Latine, can for it give the Engliſh, I ſay not how much his profiting would be in a ſhort time, but leave it to tryal.

And for the eaſe of the Maſter, there are extant in Mr. *Clarks Dux Grammaticus* (pag. 246, &c.) ſeveral *Engliſh Dialogues*, of ſuch compoſition as I ſpeak, ready for Tranſlation; which, by that time the Scholar hath well gone through with, according to the way that I ſpeak of, he will (by Gods bleſſing on his pains and induſtry) have attained ſuch a dexterity in Tranſlating, that he will now be fit to be put to any performance, where his *Invention* ſhall be exerciſed henceforward for *Matter*, as his *Memory* all this while hath been for *Words*, being able to cloath his thoughts in proper Language, and ſo fit for the *Higher School*, where I ſhall leave him to the Maſters skill and care.

But becauſe that Book may not be to be had at every hand to be conſulted with, therefore that the Reader may not go without an exemplification of the thing I propound; and withal, that I may contribute ſtill ſomewhat more towards the eaſe of the Teacher, and uſe of the Learner, I have here added ſome new Dialogues of mine own contriving for that purpoſe: The Tranſlation whereof, if performed according to the Idiome of the Latine, will be no unelegant Compoſition (as the Latines of them lying by me, if occaſion were, would ſhew, which I forbear to publiſh, becauſe the deſign of theſe is only to be Engliſhes for others to tranſlate into Latine:) But if the Idiome of the Latine be not obſerved in the rendring, then the Tranſlation will be bald and unelegant, and indeed not Latine, but a kind of barbarous and ridiculous Gibberiſh, like that which Petties and Puiſnees are uſed to ſpeak.

Certain

Certain Idiomatical Dialogues, contrived on purpoſe by the Tranſlation of them to bring off Children from the baldneſs of a Verbal Tranſlating.

DIALOGUE I.

Francis. John.

F. WHat ſays the World of me?

J. 'Tis the common ſpeech of the World, that you are too much given to the World.

F. This is the faſhion of the world, to ſay any thing of any man.

J. I believe you cannot tell which way in the world to help it.

F. Could I do it, it would be as acceptable to me as any thing in the world.

J. It is to no end in the world to go about it.

F. I had as lieve as any thing in the world, I could tell who were the Author of that ſlander. Let him go to the worlds end, I will reſolve to follow him.

J. Ah by no means in the world, you ſhall not do ſo: that would be a piece of the greateſt folly in the world.

F. I ſhould be the maddeſt man in the world, if I ſhould let ſuch a one as him ſcape ſcot free.

J. There is nothing in the world more fooliſh than an angry man, who minds nothing in the world, but how to revenge himſelf of thoſe, that have done him wrong.

F. It makes me ſo mad to have ſuch a thing talked of me, that I neither know whereabouts in the world I am, nor what in the world to do, nor which way in the world to turn me.

J. It is one of the ſtrangeſt things in the world, that you ſhould be ſo angry for a thing of nothing.

F. I had as good be out of the world, as live to be ſo ſlandered in it.

J. You talk juſt for all the world, as if there were no where in the world any to be found, who were as ill talked of as you.

F. Go any whither in the world, and all the world over, you will find none who deſerves leſs than I do, to be ſo ill talked of.

J. As

J. As the world rules, you ſhall find few, but ſuffer as ill as you do. And this is no new complaint but now come up. In elder times *Socrates* and a world more, who are many years ſince gone to the other world, who yet will be well ſpoken of to the worlds end, were in every whit as bad a caſe as you. And he were the maddeſt man in the world, that ſhould think not to fare as others do.

F. It is a world of wrongs that I have ſuffered in this reſpect: but there ſeems to be ſomewhat of reaſon in what you ſay; and therefore let the world go which way it will, I will reſolve to take all well.

J. 'Tis Chriſtian-like done of you: and when the world, and all things in the world ſhall come to nothing, then ſhall the benefit of this ſo great contentedneſs of yours be in being.

DIALOGUE II.

Charles. Anthony.

C. HOW do Horſes ſell here, *Anthony?*

A. They are things that a while ago would have given money, but now a-days they hardly give any thing.

C. But Bullocks ſurely bear a price.

A. Truly within this few years they would have given ſomething, but now they too are much fallen of price: Horſes will give more than they yet. You may buy a good pair of Bullocks for eight pound.

C. And are Farms down of price too?

A. How ſhould they be otherwiſe, when Corn gives ſo little? I have a piece of Land to ſell; I am confident there is no better in all this Country, and that will give more, and yet I may go ſeek my Chapman.

C. How do you value it? ſet a price on it: I'le be your Chapman, if we can agree of price.

A. Take it for an hundred pound.

C. You are over dear of it; it is not worth ſo much. Give me your hand, here's fifty for you.

A. It is worth as much more, if a man might have to the worth of it.

C. Chuſe it, I will not give a penny more for it.

A. And I will not take a penny leſs for it.

C. Then I do not believe we ſhall agree.

A. I cannot help that, unleſs I mean to undo my ſelf, as God forbid I ſhould. I ſtand not in ſo great need yet, I thank

thank God. No doubt but within a while Land will riſe of price again.

C. Will you take my money before I go? I will pay you down ready money.

A. I have told you my price. I cannot abate a penny of it. If you like it ſo, I will be my words-maſter.

C. If that be your mind, I ſhall give over, and not give you one word more.

A. As you have a mind. I have told you my mind.

C. Then farewel, *Anthony*.

A. Farewel to you, *Charles*.

DIALOGUE III.

Edward. Andrew.

E. *Andrew*, it gave me in my mind, there would be ſomewhat to do betwixt *George* and *Thomas*, before they had done and parted.

A. What's the matter, *Ned*?

E. It ſo fell out, that they fell out ſo, that it came at laſt to handy ſtrokes.

A. That's a bad matter; but who, I pray thee, got the better of it?

E. Though *Thomas* were the better ſuffer, and for a while had the better of it, yet at laſt they parted even hands. For if *Thomas* gave *George* a daſh on the teeth, and made him give back, *George* had a good heart, and well knowing what a ſtout man he had to do withal, behaved himſelf like a man, and would not give out, but gave him like for like.

A. What was the matter, that they fell together by the ears?

E. *George* making his boaſt, that he was deſcended from a Knight, gave out, that he was come of as good a Houſe as *Thomas* was. Whereupon *Thomas* took *George* a box on the ear: and withal gave him warning to give over his comparing himſelf with him, who was of noble blood; and ſaid moreover he would give him as much more, if he took not heed.

A. What anſwer did *George* give him to this?

E. He only gave him a Challenge into the field, and then gave him never a word more.

A. In my mind they are both to blame.

E. And I am of your mind too: for they ſhould not have given way to their anger, but have given ſatisfaction to one another,

another, as reaſon was; in as much as Chriſt in the Laws that he hath given the Church, hath given us in charge not to do, but as we would be done unto: but they that wholly give themſelves to pleaſure, as moſt young men do, little mind the Laws of Chriſt, or give their minds to the keeping of them.

A. I hope, they were made friends again.

E. Yes, that they were, and they are now as great friends as ever.

A. I pray you, who made them friends?

E. One that is a very great friend to them both, as they give out, came upon them, as they were fighting, and parted the fray betwixt them, and prevailed ſo far with them, that he made them friends. And from henceforth I hope they will be always friends.

A. In truth it was kindly done of him, and like a friend, to ſet them at one again.

E. Indeed it was done of him like a Chriſtian: and no doubt but in time he ſhall get that bleſſing, which Chriſt in his Goſpel hath promiſed to give unto the Peace-makers for it.

A. I give God thanks for it, that the matter ended ſo: for I was a little fearful what the end of it would be.

DIALOGUE IV.

Matthew. Adrian.

M. ADrian, how came that into *williams* head to marry a Wife, that is ſo old, ſhe is paſt child-bearing?

A. In truth, *Matthew*, that I cannot tell now: but this I'le paſs you my word for, that all is paſt and done between them, and that without many words paſſing on either ſide. And to ſay truth, ſo pretty a Woman ſhe was, and ſo young to ſee to, that ſhe might have paſſed for a child-bearing Woman.

M. I believe then, as matters paſs, he hardly hath a Wife to his mind.

A. There is no day almoſt paſſeth him, but he wiſhes him unmarried again a hundred times over. But now 'tis paſt cure, he is undone: and though in times paſt he did ever paſs his time in pleaſure, yet muſt he now paſs the reſt of his life in trouble.

M. I am ſorry the matter is brought to that paſs. Though there were that ſaid it would ſo come to paſs, that he would repent him of his marrying, before three days were paſſed and come to an end.

A. For

A. For the moſt part it ſo comes to paſs, as indeed it needs muſt come to paſs, when men that are ſcarce paſt children, raſhly run on their own heads, and paſs not for the advice of their friends, who far paſs them in wiſdom and experience, by which they might more happily bring their purpoſes to paſs.

M. I believe it is come to paſs, as ſome men wiſhed, whom I think good to paſs over without mentioning. For my ſelf, I am paſt marrying, and ſo paſs not for my ſelf. Only I wiſh that ſome would take warning by others harms.

A. Let us let theſe things paſs, as things of no concernment unto us, and paſs away the time in other talk.

M. At preſent I am a little buſie, ſo that I cannot tarry any longer with thee: to morrow, and you pleaſe, we will meet again, and talk our bellyfuls.

A. Agreed. And in the mean time fare you well.

DIALOGUE V.

Mark. Paul.

M. I Wonder, *Paul*, what ſhould be the reaſon, that there was ſuch a quarter kept at *Geneva*.

P. *Cæſar* hearing, that the Enemy had broke out from all quarters, though ſooner than ordinary, drew his Souldiers out of their Winter-quarters into the field.

M. There was ſome reaſon for it. But where did they quarter?

P. About that time they had taken up their Quarters about *Marſeil*.

M. What became of that ſtir?

P. *Cæſar* beating up their Quarters all on a ſudden, put them into ſuch diſorder, that they preſently forſook their Arms, and took their heels, and ran away. Nevertheleſs a Quarter of the Enemies Army was ſlain.

M. What became of the reſt?

P. Some eſcaped by flight: others were taken alive, and had quarter given them.

M. He played his part finely. But I had heard, there was no quarter given.

P. Nay, they that asked for quarter, had it: they only being killed that would not take quarter.

M. 'Twas Prince-like done: for as the Poet long ſince ſaid, It is the part of a Prince to ſpare them that ſubmit, but to bring down thoſe that ſtand it out.

DIA-

DIALOGUE VI.

Richard. Peter.

R. LET us conſider, *Peter*, how far it may be fit for us to make our ſelves to do in this affair.

P. In truth I do not think it fit, that we our ſelves ſhould be at the doing of it.

R. What elſe then do you think fit to be done then?

P. I think we muſt think of, and at a fit time ſend over thither a man fit for that imployment.

R. Money is fit: and I deſire by all means that what is fit ſhould be done: but I cannot think of a man fit to ſend: and this buſineſs is not fit to be put to every one, but one that is fit for the turn, and will do no more but what is fit.

P. You do as it is fit you ſhould. But what think you of *Giles*, a man fit for any thing, and that can fit his ſpeech to any turn; and who hath now got ſhooes ſo fit for his feet, that though a while ago he had a fit of the Gout, yet now it is compleatly fitted for going; may not he fit our turn?

R. He will do well for a fit: but ſometimes he falls into a fit of talking, and then talks more than is fit, and ſo marrs all.

P. If his wit do but come and go by fits, it were more fit that lame *Giles* were let alone, and not ſent at this fit.

R. 'Tis as I tell you.

DIALOGUE VII.

Thomas. George.

T. GEorge, have you heard the news of *Robert*?

G. What? that he is over head and ears in love.

T. I mar'l who put it into his head to love that Wench. This miſchief will fall on his pate, be he who he will be.

G. I imagine he went to her of his own head.

T. But do not he and *Richard* lay their heads together ſometimes?

G. You have hit the nail on the head.

T. Some miſchief or other will light on their heads. But this it is to give young men their heads, who do things of greateſt concernment, they care not how, and hand over head.

G. But, if it ſhould come into his Fathers head, who is one of the heads of the people, that he had any ſuch mind, he would go near to break his head with his ſtaff next time he met him, though he were ſure to have a ſmart Fine ſet on his own head for it afterwards.

T. 'Twere more fit he were bravely leading Souldiers in the head of an Army, than ſo baſely lying in a Ladies lap.

G. In truth it is juſt as you ſay. But thus you ſee, the world rules. Farewel.

DIALOGUE VIII.

Cornelius. Tiberius.

C. LIſt to, *Tiberius*, have you read the Liſt of the Sword-players?

T. Yes, *Cornelius*, I have read it all over.

C. Hath *Siſennius* liſted himſelf among them?

T. He was not in that Liſt, that I ſaw.

C. 'Tis like he hath no liſt, either to enter the Liſts with any man, or ſo much as to run from the Liſts to the Goal.

T. Why ſhould a man undertake what he hath no liſt to? Let every man do as he liſts.

C. 'Tis a fine thing indeed for a man to live as he liſts: but that is not as every man liſts.

T. He may do what he liſts, that liſts to do but what he may.

DIALOGUE IX.

Giles. Humphry.

G. HOW now, *Humphry*? what makes you ſo ſad? is all well at home?

H. I would it were. For to tell you truly, we are in an ill taking for my Brother *Harry*.

G. What's the matter?

H. Woe is me! three days ago, without making any body acquainted with his purpoſe, he took Boat, and went over Sea; and what is become of him we cannot tell.

G. How can you tell that he is gone over Sea?

H. We were told it by one, whoſe word may be taken: and who came to us on purpoſe to tell us.

G. Is

G. Is your Father made acquainted with it yet?

H. Yes, we told him of all.

G. And what ſaid he to it? how did he take it? did he not take on, when he was told it?

H. We are ſomewhat afraid he ſhould take ſome harm by it, if we ſhould tell him: but he ſeemed to take it very patiently. He only ſaid, Since folly hath taken ſo deep root in him, that he will neither take my counſel, nor take example by others to do well, but ſtill takes bad courſes, let him take his ſwing for me, and take his courſe.

G. I was afraid he ſhould have taken it mightily to heart: but it ſeems he never takes thought, what becomes of him.

H. You are mightily miſtaken, *Giles*; for though he makes as though he did not grieve, yet it grieves him to the heart: and you may ſee it by his words, which, if you take them not in the wrong meaning, do plainly enough ſhew that he is ill vexed. Take my word for this, he is ſo troubled in mind, how cloſely ſoever he carry it, that he is quite taken off from buſineſs, and lets all be at fixes and ſevens.

G. What courſe do you think your Brother will take now?

H. I ſuppoſe he will take his pleaſure as long as his money laſts, which he took up at uſe before he went, and took away with him, when he went. After, he muſt take his fortune.

G. While he takes theſe ſo wrong courſes, he hardly takes after his Father.

H. No, no; he takes not at all after him. He took a wiſer courſe.

G. But hath he not been uſed to take pains? or is he unable to take any pains?

H. He hath taken ſome pains in ſome kind of ſtudies, which ſome people are mightily taken with. And he muſt ſhortly take his choice, whether he will take pains, or ſtarve. For he hath afore now ſpent more money, than he took with him now, in leſs than a years time.

G. In my mind, it will be the beſt courſe he can take, to come back: and if he do, no doubt his Father will be glad to ſee him, and within a while take to him again.

H. God forbid elſe. Yet this I aſſure my ſelf of, that when time ſerves he will take him aſide, and take him up ſharply for his going away.

G. There is no doubt of this: and it will be but fit for him ſo to do.

H. God ſend he but come well home; and for the reſt I take no great care.

DIALOGUE X.

Orbilius. Davus.

O. YOU, Boy, looſe this arrant Knave's points, and down with his Breeches. I'le pay him ſoundly, and I live. Why don't you ſtir? Give me a rod, ſome body, quickly. Go to, take him upon your back; up with him, I ſay, aloft.

D. Sir, will you puniſh me before you have heard me ſpeak for my ſelf? Do me right, or be no Maſter.

O. So I will: for I will ſerve you as you deſerve.

D. But that you may not abuſe me, hear me I pray you firſt, what I have to ſay for my ſelf.

O. As if you could ſay any thing for your ſelf, that were worth the hearing! a likely matter.

D. Truly, Sir, you cannot tell, until you have heard.

O. Say then quickly what you have to ſay.

D. This I ſay then, that you are too much in paſſion at preſent to do but right in puniſhing. For it cannot be, that he ſhould obſerve a meaſure in puniſhing, that keeps anger while he puniſheth. And therefore do as *Plato* did, who, as they report, ſaid to his ſervant, that had done a fault, *But that I am angry, I would beat thee:* and let the puniſhing of me alone till another time. And do not go to beat me now in your anger; leſt you anger it afterwards when it will be too late

O. How finely the Knave plays the Philoſopher! Well, that you may not hereafter ſay, you had to do with an unreaſonable beaſt, and not with a man of reaſon, I will let you alone for the preſent, and call you to an account hereafter, for what you have done amiſs to day. Let him down.

D. Thus far well, I have gained time; I may perhaps too get my pardon at laſt. In the mean time I'le have a care to offend no more.

A Threefold Latine Tranſlation of Mr. Clarks *firſt* Engliſh Dialogue *in his* Dux Grammat. p. 246.

Henry. *Robert.*

H. WHat a world is this! What ſhould a man ſay to it? when every body falls thus foul upon poor and moſt harmleſs innocents: 'tis all one, as the world rules, to be a knave and an honeſt man, now adays.

R. Indeed for the moſt part they fare alike: or rather the better a man is, the worſe is he dealt withal for the moſt part.

H. What wonder? when men are ſo given to lying, and to follow wickedneſs, and give their minds to nothing, but to deviſe miſchief.

R. Men take ſuch bad courſes, that one knows not whom to truſt.

H. Before I take this at their hands, and put up ſo groſs wrongs, I'le do any thing.

R. You are as much to blame, in that you look to fare better. Ill will never ſhake well. Never take it to heart, man.

H. Why what muſt I do then?

R. I would have you to follow my counſel, pleaſe God and your own Conſcience, and do

H. HEm, quid hic rerum ſtatus eſt! quid dicas? cùm nemo non tam indignè in pauperculos ſummèq; innoxios homunculos impetum faciat; perinde eſt, ut nunc fit, utrum nebulo fis, an vir bonus, hoc tempore.

R. Reverà utriſque eadem, magnam partem uſu-veniunt: vel potiùs quantò ſanctioribus quis moribus vixerit, tantò ferè modis indignioribus tractatur.

H. Quid mirum? cùm ita ſint plerique proclives ad mentiendum, & ad flagitium quodvis perpetrandum, nec ad aliud quicquam adjiciant animum, quàm ad malum moliendum.

R. Ita pravis vivitur moribus, ut parum conſtet cui quis fidem habeat.

H Potiùs quàm iſthuc ab iis accipiam, atque impunè fieri mihi tam inſignitè injuriam patiar, omnia agam [omnem movebo lapidem.]

R. Simili ipſe in culpâ verſaris, meliore qui loco tuas fore res expectes. Mala mens, mala lingua. Ne te propterea affligas [animi angas.]

H. Quid itaque mihi agendum eſt?

R. Meo de conſilio velim facias. Deo, animíq; tui conſcientiæ placeas, & quam es nactus, hanc

Henricus.

H. QUæ hujus mundi conditio eſt! quid ſentias? cum tantis illi paſſim injuriis afficiantur pauperum qui maximè ſunt innocui; eódem recidit, quomodo nunc eſt, frugine quis, an nequam homo ſit, his temporibus.

R. Similia ſanè uterq; eorum magnâ ex parte patiuntur; ſeu potiùs quo quis vir præſtantior fuerit, hoc plurimùm deteriùs cum illo agitur.

H. Quid hoc monſtri eſt? cùm adeò ſtrenua detur à pleriſque opera mendaciis confingendis omnibúſq; vitæ turpitudinibus in ſe admittendis, neq; adjungatur ad aliud quicquam animus niſi ad perniciem comminiſcendam.

R. Sic flagitioſa à pleriſque omnibus vita agitur, ut incertum ſit in quo fiducia reponatur.

H. Priùs quàm æquo iſthuc animo feram, adeóque inſigni me injuriâ affici inultus perpetiar, nihil non experiar [cœlo terram miſcebo.]

R. Tam in vitio ipſe es, quod melius actum iri tecum ſperas. Malevoli, maledici. Ea noli re te macerare [ægritudini dedere.]

H. Quid me ergo facere oportet?

R. Quod ego tibi dedero conſilium, id exſequere, Divino numini mentíq; tuæ recti conſciæ obſecunda, tuúmq; pro loci tui ratione officium cole.

Robertus.

H. OQualis eſt hæc rerum facies! quid cui poſſit in mentem venire? quando in pauperiorum quoſque innocentiores tam fœdè undique à quibuſq; incurritur; tantundem eſt, ut mores ſunt, ſive quis probus ſive improbus fuerit, nunc dierum.

R. Profectò pariter cum utroque maximam partem agitur; ſive potiùs quo quis homo melior audit, eo plerunque pejora patitur.

H. Haud mirabile eſt: quando tam ſunt homines proni ad mendacia excogitanda, & improbiſſima quæque facinora facienda, atque ad nihil applicant animum præterquam machinandum aliis peſtem.

R. Adeò pravis plerique utuntur conſiliis ut neſcias cui fidem habeas.

H. Citiùs quàm ego iſthuc boni conſulam, tantámque factam mihi injuriam impunitam dimittam, nihil intactum relinquam [Acheronta movebo.]

R. Tua non minor culpa eſt, cùm rectiùs iri tibi conſultum vis. Malevolorum nunquam non malus ſermo. Hæc te res ne malè habeat [cave cordi tuo doleat.]

H. Quid igitur debebo ego facere?

R. Meam velim auctoritatem & conſilium ſequare. Deo propriæq; mentis conſcientiæ morem geras, ac tuum quo es loco munus ſedulus præſtes.

your duty in your place.

H. *If a man be taken tardy, and do amiß but once, he is ſure to hear of it at every hand.*

R. *Be ruled by me, and never take that to heart, that they ſet at their heels, and care not a pin for them all.*

H. *'Tis not ſo eaſie a matter as you think, to take theſe things well. God give us patience, for we ſtand in great need thereof.*

R. *Indeed they had as good take a mans purſe by the high-way ſide, as to rob him of his good name; and they might even as well hang him out-right, as thus to uſe him.*

H. *'Tis as diſhonourable, for they muſt anſwer at Gods Judgment-ſeat for the one, as well as at earthly Bars for the other.*

R. *'Tis no very ſtrange thing, for thus have they done with the beſt men ever ſince the Apoſtles times.*

H. *And for any thing I ſee, there is ſmall hope of mends, men rather grow worſe and worſe.*

R. *Be you content therefore, mind your calling, look to your book, ſtudy hard, and follow learning for all that men ſay or do of you.*

H. *I ſee now he muſt riſe betimes that pleaſeth all. Farewel.*

hanc provinciam ornes.

H. Si quis oſcitans opprimatur, unicâq; vel vice titubaverit, non dubium eſt quin magno ei paſſim probro futurum ſit.

R. Auſculta mihi, nec ſit ea tibi res ſolicitudini, quam illi ſúſque déque habent, quin eos omnes non tanti æſtimes.

H. Haud ita eſt facile, ac tibi videtur, æquò iſta animo tolerare. Donet nobis Deus patientiam; nam illa multum nobis opus eſt.

R. Unum ſanè & idem hoc eſt, regiâ eunti viâ marſupium auferre, atq; bonam ejus exiſtimationem lædere, quin æquè eum vel patibulo ſuſpendant, atque modis ita indignis accipiant.

H. Æquè inhoneſtum eſt, tam enim alterius reddenda eſt ab iis ratio pro tribunali divino, quàm alterius in foro humano.

R. Non magnopere mirandum eſt, hoc enim pacto cum virorum optimis ab Apoſtolicis jam uſq; temporibus egerunt.

H. Et quantum ego perſpicio, quàm exigua illorum corrigendi ſpes eſt, potiùs indies in pejus proficiunt.

R. Quin tu ergo acquieſce, res tuas ſedulò age, ſummam in libros curam impende, animum ad rei literariæ ſtudium diligenter adjunge, plurimúmq; confer operæ ad conſequendam eruditionem, ut ut de te populi ſermo ſit.

H. Experior jam perquam eſſe difficile placere omnibus. Vale.

H. Si quis delictum in ſe admiſiſſe offendatur, ſemélq; unquam perperam egerit, non deerunt, qui id ei primâ quâque occaſione exprobrent.

R. Me audi, neque ullâ ſis de eo ſolicitudine quod hi pro nihilo ducunt, atque univerſos illos flocci facias.

H. Majoris eſt res negotii quàm tu opinaris, æqui boníq; hæc conſulere. Patientiâ donet nos Deus, hâc enim nos quàm maximè egemus.

R. Una profectò res eſt ſive cui nummos regiam ſecus viam adimant, ſive exiſtimationi ejus infamiæ maculam inurant, imò ſatius eſſet, ut è veſtigio eum ſuſpendio ſtrangulent, quàm tantâ contumeliâ excipiant.

H. Perinde eſt inglorium; æquè enim reſpondendum eſt illis de altero ad Dei tribunal, atque de altero ad cancellos forenſes.

R. Minimè mirum eſt, nam ad hunc modum ſpectatiſſimos quoſque viros jam inde ab ipſis Apoſtolis tractârunt.

H. Quantum verò ego intelligere poſſum, fore ut in meliores evadant vix eſt ſperandum, magis in deterius quotidie à pleriſque degeneratur.

R. Tu itaque contentus ſorte

H. Facinore ſi in ullo deprehendaris, atque omnino ſemel lapſus fueris, id tibi ab omnibus, prout res ſe tulerit, vitio vertetur.

R. Mihi obtempera, nolíque ob illud tuum ſolicitare animum, quod iſti ſibi deſpicatui habent, ſed illos cunctos nec pili pendas.

H. Non adeò expedita res eſt atque tu exiſtimas, hæc humaniter ferre. Impartiat nobis Deus patientiam, etenim nos hujus vehementer indigemus.

R. Reverà nihil intereſt utrum aliquem regiam juxta viam pecuniis exuant, an ignominiæ ſordibus ejus famam deturpent, quinetiam eâdem operâ ei laqueo gulam frangant, quâ illum tam indignè tractant.

H. Nihilo minus eſt infame, nam tam debebunt Deo reddere rationem de altero, quàm de altero hominibus.

R. Non eſt hoc adeò monſtri ſimile, quandoquidem ipſis jam inde uſque ab Apoſtolis ita cum optimis quibuſque viris agi ſolitum eſt.

H. Atque ut mea perſpicientia eſt, vix eſt ut ſperes futurum, ut unquam corrigantur, potiùs in pejus magis magíſque prolabuntur.

R. Æqui igitur boníque tu iſthæc

quâ abi, munus tuum dignè administra, strenuam in libris operam pone, in studia tua diligenter incumbe, omnéque in doctrinâ consequendâ tempus tuum colloca, quicquid de te ab aliis dicatur, agatúrve.

H. Nunc perspicio multi esse rem laboris nemini displicere.

isthæc consule, tuum quod tibi datum est pensum confice, libris tuis animum intende, in studiis tuis omnes industriæ tuæ nervos contende, bonisq; te totum literis dede, quocunque te homines loco, numeróve habeant.

H. Compertum habeo jam maximo esse illi opere annitendum cui in animo est omne ut punctum ferat.

FINIS.